

**United States**  
**Securities and Exchange Commission**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 10-K**

(Mark One)

ANNUAL REPORT UNDER SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

FOR THE TRANSITION PERIOD FROM \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

Commission File Number 0-54402

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

91-1835664

(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

40 Marcus Drive, Melville, New York

(Address of principal executive offices)

11747

(Zip Code)

(631) 760-8100

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class

None

Name of each exchange on which registered

Not applicable

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:

**Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share**

(Title of Class)

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer  (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes  No

State the aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates computed by reference to the price at which the common equity was last sold, or the average bid and asked price of such common equity, as of the last business day of the registrant's most recently completed second

fiscal quarter.

As of June 30, 2017, the aggregate market value of the registrant's common stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant was \$11,382,598 based on the closing sale price as reported on the OTCQB market. As of March 29, 2018, there were 6,483,253 shares of common stock outstanding.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

None

---

---

## INDEX

	<u>Page No.</u>
<a href="#">Forward-Looking Statements</a>	2
<b><a href="#">PART I</a></b>	
Item 1. <a href="#">Business</a>	3
Item 1A. <a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	25
Item 1B. <a href="#">Unresolved Staff Comments</a>	25
Item 2. <a href="#">Properties</a>	25
Item 3. <a href="#">Legal Proceedings</a>	25
Item 4. <a href="#">Mine Safety Disclosures</a>	25
<b><a href="#">PART II</a></b>	
Item 5. <a href="#">Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</a>	26
Item 6. <a href="#">Selected Financial Data</a>	28
Item 7. <a href="#">Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	28
Item 7A. <a href="#">Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</a>	67
Item 8. <a href="#">Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</a>	67
Item 9. <a href="#">Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</a>	68
Item 9A. <a href="#">Controls and Procedures</a>	68
Item 9B. <a href="#">Other Information</a>	69
<b><a href="#">PART III</a></b>	
Item 10. <a href="#">Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</a>	70
Item 11. <a href="#">Executive Compensation</a>	76
Item 12. <a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</a>	81
Item 13. <a href="#">Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</a>	83
Item 14. <a href="#">Principal Accountant Fees and Services</a>	87
<b><a href="#">PART IV</a></b>	
Item 15. <a href="#">Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules</a>	88
Item 16. <a href="#">Form 10-K Summary</a>	94
<a href="#">Signatures</a>	95

---

## **PART I**

### **Forward-Looking Statements**

This Annual Report contains forward-looking statements as that term is defined in the federal securities laws. The events described in forward-looking statements contained in this Annual Report may not occur. Generally these statements relate to business plans or strategies, projected or anticipated benefits or other consequences of our plans or strategies, projected or anticipated benefits from acquisitions to be made by us, or projections involving anticipated revenues, earnings or other aspects of our operating results. The words “may,” “will,” “expect,” “believe,” “anticipate,” “project,” “plan,” “intend,” “estimate,” and “continue,” and their opposites and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements. We caution you that these statements are not guarantees of future performance or events and are subject to a number of uncertainties, risks and other influences, many of which are beyond our control, that may influence the accuracy of the statements and the projections upon which the statements are based. Factors which may affect our results include, but are not limited to, the risks and uncertainties discussed in Item 7 of this Annual Report under “Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition”.

Any one or more of these uncertainties, risks and other influences could materially affect our results of operations and whether forward-looking statements made by us ultimately prove to be accurate. Our actual results, performance and achievements could differ materially from those expressed or implied in these forward-looking statements. We undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether from new information, future events or otherwise.

### **Intellectual Property**

This Annual Report includes references to our federally registered trademarks, *BioRestorative Therapies*, the *Dragonfly Logo*, *brtxDISC*, *ThermoStem*, *Stem Pearls* and *Stem the Tides of Time*. We also own a published trademark application for *BRTX* and an allowed trademark application for *BRTX-100*. The Dragonfly Logo is also registered with the U.S. Copyright Office. This Annual Report also includes references to trademarks, trade names and service marks that are the property of other organizations. Solely for convenience, trademarks and trade names referred to in this Annual Report appear without the ®, <sup>SM</sup> or <sup>TM</sup> symbols, and copyrighted content appears without the use of the symbol ©, but the absence of use of these symbols does not reflect upon the validity or enforceability of the intellectual property owned by us or third parties.

## **ITEM 1. BUSINESS.**

### **(a) Business Development**

As used in this Annual Report on Form 10-K (the “Annual Report”), references to the “Company”, “we”, “us”, or “our” refer to BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and its subsidiaries.

We were incorporated in Nevada on June 13, 1997. On August 15, 2011, we changed our name from “Stem Cell Assurance, Inc.” to “BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.” Effective January 1, 2015, we reincorporated in Delaware.

In January 2017, we announced that we had submitted an investigational new drug, or an IND, application to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or the FDA, to obtain authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using our lead cell therapy candidate, *BRTX-100*, to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs. In February 2017, we received such authorization from the FDA.

In August 2017, an Australian patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued to us. In December 2017, a Japanese patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued to us.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we raised an aggregate of \$2,080,250 in connection with sales of common stock and warrants and from the exercise of warrants, and an aggregate of \$2,197,046 in net debt financing. As of December 31, 2017, our outstanding debt of \$3,999,335, together with interest at rates ranging between 0% and 15% per annum, was due through December 2018.

In January 2018, we hired Adam D. Bergstein to serve as Senior Vice President, Planning and Business Development. See Item 10 (“Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance”).

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, we have received aggregate equity financing (representing proceeds received from the exercise of common stock purchase warrants) and debt financing of \$452,168 and \$420,500, respectively, debt (inclusive of accrued interest) of \$207,993 has been converted into or exchanged for common stock, \$119,583 of debt has been repaid, and the due date for the repayment of \$788,982 of debt has been extended to dates between March 2018 and August 2018. Giving effect to the above actions, we currently have notes payable aggregating \$598,500 which are past due.

(b) **Business**

**General**

We develop therapeutic products and medical therapies using cell and tissue protocols, primarily involving adult (non-embryonic) stem cells. Our two core programs, as described below, relate to the treatment of disc/spine disease and metabolic disorders:

- ***Disc/Spine Program (brtxDisc)***. Our lead cell therapy candidate, *BRTX-100*, is a product formulated from autologous (or a person's own) cultured mesenchymal stem cells, or MSCs, collected from the patient's bone marrow. We intend that the product will be used as an alternative non-surgical treatment for protruding and bulging lumbar discs in patients suffering from chronic lumbar disc disease. The *BRTX-100* production process involves collecting bone marrow from a patient, isolating and culturing stem cells from the bone marrow and cryopreserving the cells. In an outpatient procedure, *BRTX-100* is to be injected by a physician into the patient's damaged disc. The treatment is intended for patients whose pain has not been alleviated by non-surgical procedures or conservative therapies and who potentially face the prospect of surgery. In January 2017, we submitted an IND application to the FDA to obtain authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using *BRTX-100* to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs. In February 2017, we received such authorization from the FDA. We intend to commence such clinical trial during the third or fourth quarter of 2018 (assuming the receipt of necessary funding). See "Disc/Spine Program" below.
- ***Metabolic Program (ThermoStem)***. We are developing a cell-based therapy to target obesity and metabolic disorders using brown adipose (fat) derived stem cells, or BADSC, to generate brown adipose tissue, or BAT. We refer to this as our *ThermoStem Program*. BAT is intended to mimic naturally occurring brown adipose depots that regulate metabolic homeostasis in humans. Initial preclinical research indicates that increased amounts of brown fat in the body may be responsible for additional caloric burning, as well as reduced glucose and lipid levels. Researchers have found that people with higher levels of brown fat may have a reduced risk for obesity and diabetes. A United States patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in September 2015, an Australian patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in August 2017, and a Japanese patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in December 2017. See "Metabolic Brown Adipose (Fat) Program" below.

We have also licensed a curved needle device designed to deliver cells and/or other therapeutic products or material to the spine and discs (and other parts of the body). In August 2015, a United States patent for this device was issued to the licensor, Regenerative Sciences, LLC. See "Curved Needle Device" below.

## Overview

Every human being has stem cells in his or her body. These cells exist from the early stages of human development until the end of a person's life. Throughout our lives, our body continues to produce stem cells that regenerate to produce differentiated cells that make up various aspects of the body such as skin, blood, muscle and nerves. These are generally referred to as adult (non-embryonic) stem cells. These cells are important for the purpose of medical therapies aiming to replace lost or damaged cells or tissues or to otherwise treat disorders.

Regenerative cell therapy relies on replacing diseased, damaged or dysfunctional cells with healthy, functioning ones or repairing damaged or diseased tissue. A great range of cells can serve in cell therapy, including cells found in peripheral and umbilical cord blood, bone marrow and adipose (fat) tissue. Physicians have been using adult stem cells from bone marrow to treat various blood cancers for 60 years (the first successful bone marrow transplant was performed in 1956). Recently, physicians have begun to use stem cells to treat various other diseases. We intend to develop cell and tissue products and regenerative therapy protocols, primarily involving adult stem cells, to allow patients to undergo cellular-based treatments.

We intend to concentrate initially on therapeutic areas in which risk to the patient is low, recovery is relatively easy, results can be demonstrated through sufficient clinical data, and patients and physicians will be comfortable with the procedure. We believe that there will be readily identifiable groups of patients who will benefit from these procedures.

Accordingly, we have focused our initial efforts in offering cellular-based therapeutic products and clinical development programs in selective areas of medicine for which the treatment protocol is minimally invasive. Such areas include the treatment of the disc and spine and metabolic-related disorders. Upon regulatory approval, we will seek to obtain third party reimbursement for our products and procedures; however, patients may be required to pay for our products and procedures out of pocket in full and without the ability to be reimbursed by any governmental and other third party payers.

We have obtained a patent as well as licenses for the exclusive use of a patent and a patent pending and have undertaken research and development efforts in connection with the development of investigational therapeutic products and medical therapies using cell and tissue protocols, primarily involving adult stem cells. See "Disc/Spine Program", "Metabolic Brown Adipose (Fat) Program" and "Curved Needle Device" below.

We have established a laboratory facility and will seek to further develop cellular-based treatments, products and protocols, stem cell-related intellectual property, or IP, and translational research applications. See "Laboratory" below.

We have not generated any significant revenues from our operations. The implementation of our business plan, as discussed below, will require the receipt of sufficient equity and/or debt financing to purchase necessary equipment, technology and materials, fund our research and development efforts, retire our outstanding debt (see “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Liquidity and Capital Resources—Availability of Additional Funds”) and otherwise fund our operations. We intend to seek such financing from current shareholders and debtholders as well as from other accredited investors. We also intend to seek to raise capital through investment bankers and from biotech funds, strategic partners and other financial institutions. We anticipate that we will require approximately \$20,000,000 in financing to commence and complete a Phase 2 clinical trial and we will require approximately \$45,000,000 in further additional funding to complete our clinical trials using *BRTX-100*, as further described in this Item 1 (assuming the receipt of no revenues from operations), repay our outstanding debt (\$3,999,335 as of December 31, 2017) (assuming that no debt is converted into equity) and fund general operations. We will also require a substantial amount of additional funding to implement our other programs described in this Item 1. No assurance can be given that the anticipated amounts of required funding are correct or that we will be able to accomplish our goals within the timeframes projected. In addition, no assurance can be given that we will be able to obtain any required financing on commercially reasonable terms or otherwise. We may also seek to have our debtholders convert all or a portion of their debt into equity. No assurance can be given that we will be able to convert such debt into equity on commercially reasonable terms or otherwise. If we are unable to obtain adequate funding, we may be required to significantly curtail or discontinue our proposed operations. See Item 7 “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition – We will need to obtain a significant amount of financing to initiate and complete our clinical trials and implement our business plan. – We will need to obtain additional financing to satisfy debt obligations.”).

## **Disc/Spine Program**

### *General*

Among the initiatives that we are currently pursuing is our *Disc/Spine Program*, with our initial investigational product being called *BRTX-100*. We have obtained a license (see “License” below) that permits us to use technology for adult stem cell treatment of disc and spine conditions, including protruding and bulging discs. The technology is an advanced stem cell culture and injection procedure into the intervertebral disc, or IVD, that may offer relief from lower back pain, buttock and leg pain, and numbness and tingling in the legs and feet.

Lower back pain is the most common, most disabling, and most costly musculoskeletal ailment faced worldwide. According to a recent market report, there are nearly 25 million people in the United States with chronic lower back pain of which approximately 5 million have pain caused by a protruding or bulging disc. We believe that between 500,000 and 1 million of these back pain sufferers will have an invasive surgical procedure to try to alleviate the pain associated with these lower back conditions. Clinical studies have documented that the source of the pain is most frequently damage to the IVD. This can occur when forces, whether a single load or repetitive microtrauma, exceed the IVD’s inherent capacity to resist those loads. Aging, obesity, smoking, lifestyle, and certain genetic factors may predispose one to an IVD injury.

While once thought to be benign, the natural history of lower back pain is often one of chronic recurrent episodes of pain leading to progressive disability. This is believed to be a direct result of the IVD’s poor healing capacity after injury. The IVD is the largest avascular (having few or no blood vessels) structure in the body and is low in cellularity. Therefore, its inherent capacity to heal after injury is poor. The clinical rationale of *BRTX-100* is to deliver a high concentration of the patient’s own MSCs into the site of pathology to promote healing and relieve pain.



We have developed a mesenchymal stem cell investigational product, *BRTX-100*, derived from autologous (or a person's own) human bone marrow, cultured and formulated to be delivered into a protruding or bulging disc.

In January 2017, we announced that we had submitted an IND application to the FDA to obtain authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using our lead cell therapy candidate, *BRTX-100*, to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs. In February 2017, we received such authorization from the FDA. We intend to commence such clinical trial during the third or fourth quarter of 2018 (assuming the receipt of necessary funding).

In addition to developing *BRTX-100*, we may also seek to sublicense the technology to a strategic third party, who may assist in gaining FDA approval for our lumbar disc indication, or third parties for use in connection with cellular-based treatment programs with regard to disc and spine related conditions.

We have established a laboratory, which includes a clean room facility, to perform the production of cell products (possibly including *BRTX-100*) for use in our clinical trials or general research purposes. This capability may also enable us to develop our pipeline of future products and expand our stem cell-related IP. See "Laboratory" and "Technology; Research and Development" below.

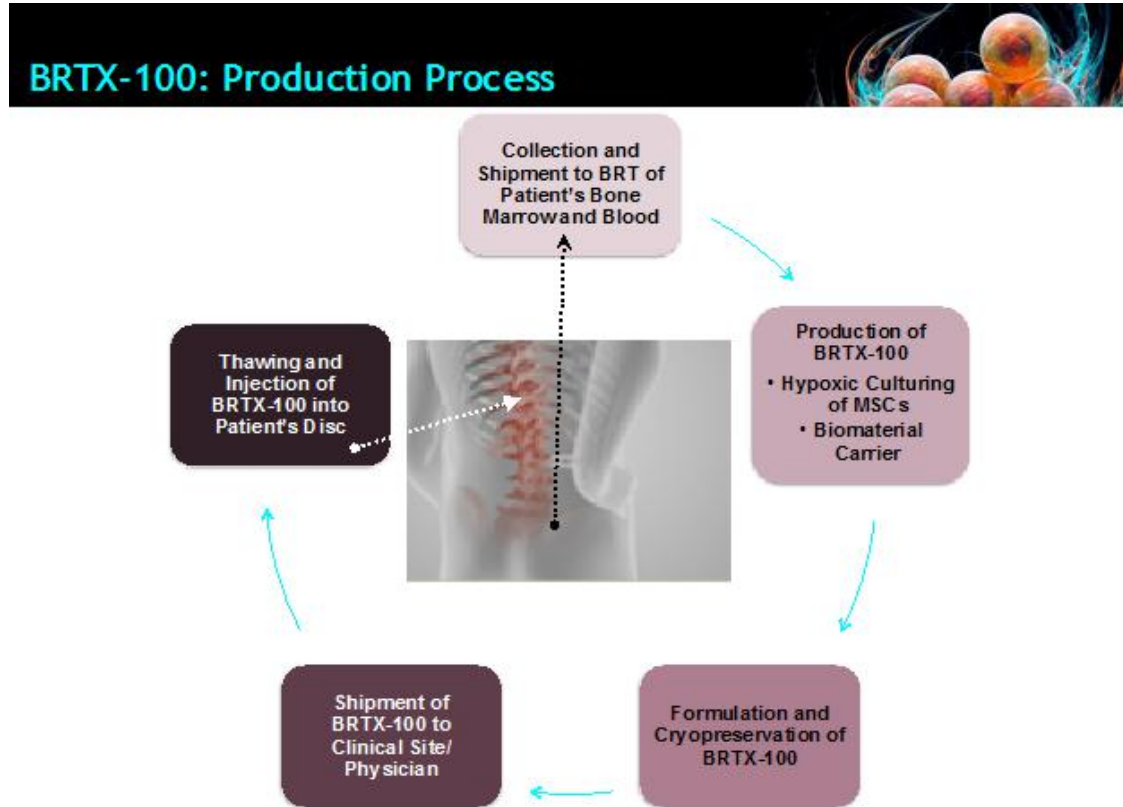
#### *BRTX-100*

Our lead investigational therapeutic product, *BRTX-100*, is an autologous hypoxic (low oxygen) cultured mesenchymal stem cell product derived from a patient's bone marrow and formulated with a proprietary carrier. The cryopreserved sterile cellular product will be provided to the clinician in vials for injection into damaged lumbar discs. The therapeutic delivery of *BRTX-100*, in treatment of chronic lumbar disc disease, is performed using a standard 20 gauge 3.5 inch introducer needle and a 25 gauge 6 inch needle that extends into the disc region where the product is delivered. Specific medical practitioners will be provided training using the product with regard to the injection procedure. It is anticipated that the treatment and delivery of the product will be a 30 minute outpatient procedure.

Mesenchymal stem cells used in *BRTX-100* are similar to other MSCs under development by others; however, in order to enhance the survivability of our bone marrow-derived MSCs in the avascular environment of the damaged disc, *BRTX-100* is expanded under hypoxic conditions for a period of approximately three weeks. This process is intended to result in a cell population with enhanced viability and therapeutic potential following injection locally into injured spinal discs. Publications and scientific literature have indicated that MSCs preconditioned in hypoxic environment show enhanced skeletal muscle regeneration, improved blood flow and vascular formation compared to MSCs cultured under normoxic (normal oxygen) conditions.

## Production and Delivery

The production of *BRTX-100* begins with the physician collecting bone marrow from the patient under a local anesthesia. Peripheral blood is also collected from the patient. The physician will then send the patient's bone marrow and blood samples to our laboratory (or a contract laboratory) for culturing and formulation. The hypoxic culturing process applied is intended to result in the selection of a cell population that is suitable for an improved possibility of survival in the internal disc environment. The cell culturing process and product formulation will take approximately three weeks, with an additional two weeks required for quality control testing required to meet product release criteria. We will then send the therapeutic cryopreserved stem cells (*BRTX-100*) in a sterile vial back to the physician's offices where it will be thawed prior to the procedure. The price structure for the procedure and our services has not been determined and no assurances can be given in this regard. The following illustrates the process



## License

Pursuant to our license agreement with Regenerative Sciences, LLC, or Regenerative, that became effective in April 2012, we have obtained, among other things, a worldwide (excluding Asia and Argentina), exclusive, royalty-bearing license from Regenerative to utilize or sublicense a certain method for culturing cells for use in treating, among other things, disc and spine conditions, including protruding and bulging discs. The technology that has been licensed is an advanced stem cell culture and injection procedure that may offer relief from lower back pain, buttock and leg pain, and numbness and tingling in the legs and feet. Pursuant to the license agreement, we have also obtained a worldwide, exclusive, royalty-bearing license from Regenerative to utilize or sublicense a certain curved needle device for the administration of specific cells and/or cell products to the disc and/or spine (and other parts of the body). It will be necessary to advance the design of this medical device to facilitate the delivery of substances, including living cells, to specific locations within the body and minimize the potential for damage to nearby structures.

The license agreement provides for the requirement that we achieve certain milestones or pay certain minimum royalty amounts in order to maintain the exclusive nature of the licenses. The license agreement also provides for a royalty-bearing sublicense of certain aspects of the technology to Regenerative for use for certain purposes, including in the United States and the Cayman Islands. Further, the license agreement requires that Regenerative furnish certain training, assistance and consultation services with regard to the licensed technology.

#### *Animal Study*

The efficacy and safety of *BRTX-100* has been tested in a degenerative intervertebral rabbit disc model. In this study, 80 rabbits underwent surgery to create a puncture in the discs. Four weeks post surgery, each rabbit had either contrast, a biomaterial carrier or *BRTX-100* injected into the discs. In order to study the biodistribution and efficacy of *BRTX-100*, the rabbits were evaluated at day 56 and day 120.

The key safety findings of the animal study are as follows:

- There was no evidence or observation of gross toxicity related to the administration of *BRTX-100* at either time point. The clinical pathology across both groups and time points were within expected normal historical ranges and under the conditions of the test. No abnormalities (including fractures or overt signs of lumbar disc disease) were identified after review of the radiographic images taken at both endpoints for both groups. No toxicity or adverse finding was evident in the systemic tissues or the discs of animals receiving *BRTX-100*.
- There was no detectable presence of human cells (*BRTX-100*) observed at the day 56 interim time point. This is consistent with the proposed mechanism of action that *BRTX-100* acts through a paracrine effect of secreted growth and immunomodulation factors.

The key efficacy findings of the animal study are as follows:

- *BRTX-100* showed a statistically significant DHI (disc height increase) over the control group at day 120.
- *BRTX-100* showed a statistically significant improvement in disc histology over the control group at day 120 as graded by a validated histology scale. *BRTX-100* showed a significant improvement in the cellularity and matrix of the disc when compared to the control at day 120.

#### *Clinical Trial*

In December 2014, we held a pre-IND meeting with the FDA's Office of Cellular Tissue and Gene Therapies within the FDA's Center for Biologics, Evaluation and Research. At the meeting, representatives of the FDA commented on our plans for an IND submission and a clinical trial with regard to the disc program. The FDA representatives identified certain necessary pre-clinical research and data as well as various suggestions to modify the clinical trial design. In January 2017, we announced that we had submitted an IND application to the FDA to obtain authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using our lead cell therapy candidate, *BRTX-100*, to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs. In February 2017, we received such authorization from the FDA. We intend to commence such clinical trial during the third or fourth quarter of 2018 (assuming the receipt of necessary funding).

The following describes the Phase 2 clinical trial authorized by the FDA:

A Phase 2 Prospective, Double-Blinded, Placebo Controlled, Randomized Study

- General
  - 72 patients; randomized 2:1, *BRTX-100* to control
  - 10-20 clinical trial sites
  - Primary efficacy endpoint at 6 months
  - Patient follow up at 12 and 24 months
- Primary Efficacy Endpoint
  - Responder endpoint - % of patients that meet the improvement in function and reduction in pain threshold
  - Improvement in function defined as at least a 30% increase in function based on the Oswestry questionnaires (ODI)
  - Reduction of pain defined as at least a 30% decrease in pain as measured using the Visual Analogue Scale (VAS)
- Additional or Secondary Endpoints
  - Quality of life assessment
  - Evolution of affected disc(s) by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

The FDA approval process can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain and there is no guarantee that the clinical trial(s) will be commenced or completed or that the product will ultimately receive approval or clearance. See “Government Regulation” below and Item 7 (“Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition – Risks Related to Our Cell Therapy Product Development Efforts; and – Risks Related to Government Regulation”).

As an alternative to undertaking the Phase 2 clinical trial ourselves, we are exploring the possible licensing of our rights with respect to *BRTX-100* to a strategic partner. Such an arrangement could possibly eliminate or significantly reduce the need to raise the substantial capital needed to commence and complete the clinical trials and undertake the commercialization of *BRTX-100* and would provide licensing-related revenue to us. Such possible licensing efforts are first being explored by us and no assurance can be given that any licensing agreement will be entered into, whether upon commercially reasonable terms or otherwise.

#### **Metabolic Brown Adipose (Fat) Program**

Since June 2011, we have been engaging in pre-clinical research efforts with respect to a platform technology utilizing brown adipose (fat) derived stem cells for therapeutic purposes. We have labeled this initiative our *ThermoStem Program*.

Brown fat is a specialized adipose (fat) tissue found in the human body that plays a key role in the evolutionarily conserved mechanisms underlying thermogenesis (generation of non-shivering body heat) and energy homeostasis in mammals - long known to be present at high levels in hibernating mammals and human newborns. Recent studies have demonstrated that brown fat is present in the adult human body and may be correlated with the maintenance and regulation of healthy metabolism, thus potentially being involved in caloric regulation. The pre-clinical *ThermoStem Program* involves the use of a cell-based (brown adipose tissue) treatment for metabolic disease, such as type 2 diabetes, obesity, hypertension and other metabolic disorders and cardiac deficiencies. We have had initial success in transplanting the tissue in animals, and we are currently exploring ways to deliver the brown fat tissue into humans. Even though present, BAT mass is very low in healthy adults and even lower in obese populations. Therefore, it may not be sufficient to either naturally impact whole body metabolism, or to be targeted by drugs intended to increase its activity in the majority of the population. Increasing BAT mass is crucial in order to benefit from its metabolic activity and this is what our *ThermoStem Program* seeks to accomplish. We may also identify other naturally occurring and chemically engineered molecules that may enhance brown adipose tissue performance.

Obesity, the abnormal accumulation of white fat tissue, leads to a number of metabolic disorders and is the driving force behind the rise of type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular diseases worldwide. Pharmacological efforts to alter metabolic homeostasis through modulating central control of appetite and satiety have had limited market penetration due to significant psychological and physiological safety concerns directly attributed to modulating these brain centers. Adipose tissue is one of the largest organs in the human body and plays a key role in central energy balance and lipid homeostasis. White and brown adipose tissues are found in mammals. White adipose tissue's function is to store energy, whereas BAT specializes in energy expenditure. Recent advancements in unraveling the mechanisms that control the induction, differentiation, proliferation, and thermogenic activity of BAT, along with the application of imaging technologies for human BAT visualization, have generated optimism that these advances may provide novel strategies for targeting BAT activation/thermogenesis, leading to efficacious and safe obesity targeted therapies.

We are developing a cell-based therapy to target obesity and metabolic disorders using BADSC. Our goal is to develop a bioengineered implantable brown adipose tissue intended to mimic ones naturally occurring in the human body. We have isolated and characterized a human multipotent stem cell population that resides within BAT depots. We have expanded these stem cells to clinically relevant numbers and successfully differentiated them into functional brown adipocytes. We intend to use adult stem cells that may be differentiated into progenitor or fully differentiated brown adipocytes, or a related cell type, which can be used therapeutically in patients. We are focusing on the development of treatment protocols that utilize allogeneic cells (i.e., stem cells from a genetically similar but not identical donor).

In order to deliver these differentiated cells into target locations *in vivo*, we seeded BADSC onto 3-dimensional biological scaffolds. Pre-clinical animal models of diet-induced obesity, that were transplanted with differentiated BADSC supported by a biological scaffold, presented significant reductions in weight and blood glucose levels compared to saline injected controls. We are identifying technology for *in vivo* delivery in small animal models. Having completed our proof of concept using our BAT in small animals, we are currently developing our next generation BAT. It is anticipated that this next version will contain a higher purity of BADSC, which is expected to increase the therapeutic effect compared to our first generation product. In addition, we are exploring the delivery of the therapeutic using encapsulation technology, which will only allow for reciprocal exchange of small molecules between the host circulation and the BAT implant. We expect that encapsulation may present several advantages over our current biological scaffolds, including prevention of any immune response or implant rejection that might occur in an immunocompetent host and an increase in safety by preventing the implanted cells from invading the host tissues and forming tumors. We have developed promising data on the loading of human stem cell-derived tissue engineered brown fat into an encapsulation device to be used as a cell delivery system for our metabolic platform program for the treatment of type 2 diabetes, obesity, hyperlipidemia and hypertension. This advancement may lead to successful transplantation of brown fat in humans. By successfully seeding human BADSC into an encapsulation device, we are advancing the development of our cell therapy program to treat metabolic disorders. This data is expected to progress our program to enable transplanted brown adipose cells to effectively maintain or regulate normal metabolism in humans. We are evaluating the next generation of BAT constructs that will first be tested in small animal models. No assurance can be given that this delivery system will be effective *in vivo* in animals or humans. Our allogeneic brown adipose derived stem cell platform potentially provides a therapeutic and commercial model for the cell-based treatment of obesity and related metabolic disorders.

In June 2012, we entered into an Assignment Agreement with the University of Utah Research Foundation, or the Foundation, and a Research Agreement with the University of Utah, or the Utah Research Agreement. Pursuant to the Assignment Agreement, which provides for royalty payments, we acquired the rights to two provisional patent applications that relate to human brown fat cell lines. No royalty amounts are payable to date. The applications have been converted to a utility application in the United States and several foreign jurisdictions. Pursuant to the Utah Research Agreement, the University of Utah, or the University, provided research services relating to the identification of brown fat tissue and the development and characterization of brown fat cell lines. The Utah Research Agreement provides that all inventions, discoveries, patent rights, information, data, methods and techniques, including all cell lines, cell culture media and derivatives thereof, are owned by us.

In February 2014, our research with regard to the identification of a population of brown adipose derived stem cells was published in *Stem Cells*, a respected stem cell journal.

In March 2014, we entered into a Research Agreement with Pfizer Inc., or the Pfizer Research Agreement, a global pharmaceutical company. Pursuant to the Pfizer Research Agreement, we were engaged to provide research and development services with regard to a joint study of the development and validation of a human brown adipose cell model. The Pfizer Research Agreement provided for an initial payment to us of \$250,000 and the payment of up to an additional \$525,000 during the two-year term of the Agreement, all of which has been received.

In August 2015, we entered into a one year research collaboration agreement with the University of Pennsylvania with regard to the understanding of brown adipose biology and its role in metabolic disorders. No amounts are payable by or to us pursuant to this agreement.

In September 2015, a United States patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued to us.

In August 2017, an Australian patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued to us.

In December 2017, a Japanese patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued to us.

Following our research activities, we intend to undertake preclinical animal studies in order to determine whether our proposed treatment protocol is feasible. Such studies are planned to begin by the third quarter of 2018. Following the completion of such studies, we intend to file an IND with the FDA and initiate a clinical trial. See “Government Regulation” below and Item 7 (“Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition – Risks Related to Our Cell Therapy Product Development Efforts; and – Risks Related to Government Regulation”). The FDA approval process can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain and there is no guarantee of ultimate approval or clearance.

We anticipate that much of our development work in this area will take place at our laboratory facility, outside core facilities at academic, research or medical institutions, or contractors. See “Laboratory” below.

### **Curved Needle Device**

Pursuant to the Regenerative license agreement discussed under “Disc/Spine Program-License” above, we have licensed and further developed a curved needle device, or CND, that is a needle system with a curved inner cannula to allow access to difficult-to-locate regions for the delivery or removal of fluids and other substances. The CND is intended to deliver stem cells and/or other therapeutic products or material to the interior of a human intervertebral disc, the spine region, or potentially other areas of the body. The device relies on the use of pre-curved nested cannulae that allow the cells or material to be deposited in the posterior and lateral aspects of the disc to which direct access is not possible due to outlying structures such as vertebra, spinal cord and spinal nerves. We anticipate that the use of the CND will facilitate the delivery of substances, including living cells, to specific locations within the body and minimize the potential for damage to nearby structures. The device may also have more general use applications. In August 2015, a United States patent for the CND was issued to the licensor, Regenerative Sciences, LLC. We anticipate that FDA approval or clearance will be necessary for the CND prior to commercialization. See “Government Regulation” below and Item 7 (“Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition – Risks Related to Our Cell Therapy Product Development Efforts; and – Risks Related to Government Regulation”). The FDA review and approval process can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain and there is no guarantee of ultimate approval or clearance.

### **Laboratory**

We have established a laboratory in Melville, New York for research purposes and have built a cleanroom within the laboratory for the possible production of cell-based therapies, such as *BRTX-100*, for use in a clinical trial or general research purposes.

As operations grow, our plans include the expansion of our laboratory to perform cellular characterization and culturing, protocol and stem cell-related IP development, translational research and therapeutic outcome analysis. As we develop our business and additional stem cell treatments are approved, we will seek to establish ourselves as a key provider of adult stem cells for therapies and expand to provide cells in other market areas for stem cell therapy. We may also use outside laboratories specializing in cell therapy services and manufacturing of cell products.

## Technology; Research and Development

We intend to utilize our laboratory or a third party laboratory in connection with cellular research activities. We also intend to seek to obtain cellular-based therapeutic technology licenses and increase our IP portfolio. We intend to seek to develop potential stem cell delivery systems or devices. The goal of these specialized delivery systems or devices is to deliver cells into specific areas of the body, control the rate, amount and types of cells used in a treatment, and populate these areas of the body with sufficient stem cells so that there is a successful therapeutic result.

We also intend to perform research to develop certain stem cell optimization compounds, media to enhance cellular growth and regeneration for the purpose of improving pre-treatment and post-treatment outcomes.

We have three pending United States patent applications with regard to two patent families. We have been issued a United States patent with regard to one of the two patent families. Patent applications with regard to one patent family have been filed in five foreign jurisdictions (of which two applications have granted as foreign patents and one application has become inactive). In addition, a Patent Cooperation Treaty, or PCT, application has been filed with regard to a second patent family and such PCT application has been filed in four foreign jurisdictions. Regenerative has filed two patent applications with regard to the technology that is the subject of the license agreement between us (see “Disc/Spine Program-License” above). A second application (U.S. Patent Application No. 15/891,852) was recently filed and claims priority to one of the Regenerative patent applications. Regenerative has been issued a patent with regard to its curved needle therapeutic delivery device. Our patent applications and those of Regenerative are currently in prosecution (i.e., we and Regenerative are seeking issued patents). A description of the patent applications and issued patents is set forth below:

Program	I.D.	Jurisdiction	Title
<i>Disc/Spine</i>	13/132,840*	US	Methods and compositions to facilitate repair of avascular tissue
	15/891,852	US	Surgical methods and compositions to facilitate repair of avascular tissue
	U.S. Patent No. 9,113,950 B2**	US	Therapeutic delivery device
<i>Metabolic</i>	U.S. Patent No. 9,133,438	US	Brown fat cell compositions and methods
	13/932,468	US	
	15/910,625	US	
	AU Patent No. 2012275335	Australia	
	12743811.7	Europe	
	230237	Israel	
	JP Patent No. 6243839	Japan	
	14/255,595	US	Human brown adipose derived stem cells and uses
	PCT/US2014/034540	Patent Cooperation Treaty	
	2014253920	Australia	
	14729769.1	Europe	
	242150	Israel	
	2016-509105	Japan	

\*Patent application filed by licensor, Regenerative Sciences, LLC




\*\*Patent issued to licensor, Regenerative Sciences, LLC

In March 2014, we entered into a Research and Development Agreement with Rohto Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd., a Japanese pharmaceutical company. Pursuant to the Rohto Research and Development Agreement, we were engaged to provide research and development services with regard to stem cells.



In March 2014, we entered into the Pfizer Research Agreement, as discussed above under “Metabolic Brown Adipose (Fat) Program”.

We have secured registrations in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for the following trademarks:

- 
- 
- 
- THERMOSTEM
- STEM PEARLS, and
- STEM THE TIDES OF TIME.

We own a published application in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for the trademark *BRTX* and an allowed application in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for the trademark *BRTX-100*.

We also have federal common law rights in the trademark BioRestorative Therapies and other trademarks and trade names used in the conduct of our business that are not registered.

Our success will depend in large part on our ability to develop and protect our proprietary technology. We intend to rely on a combination of patent, trade secret and know-how, copyright and trademark laws, as well as confidentiality agreements, licensing agreements, non-compete agreements and other agreements, to establish and protect our proprietary rights. Our success will also depend upon our ability to avoid infringing upon the proprietary rights of others, for if we are judicially determined to have infringed such rights, we may be required to pay damages, alter our services, products or processes, obtain licenses or cease certain activities. We conduct prior rights searches before launching any new product or service to put us in the best position to avoid claims of infringement.

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we incurred \$2,152,433 and \$2,883,563, respectively, in research and development expenses.

#### Scientific Advisors

We have established a Scientific Advisory Board whose purpose is to provide advice and guidance in connection with scientific matters relating to our business. Our four Scientific Advisory Board members are Dr. Wayne Marasco, Chairman, Dr. Naiyer Imam, Dr. Wayne Olan and Dr. Joy Cavagnaro. See Item 10 (“Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance – Scientific Advisors”) for a listing of the principal positions for Drs. Marasco, Imam, Olan, and Cavagnaro.

## Competition

We will compete with many pharmaceutical, biotechnology and medical device companies, as well as other private and public stem cell companies involved in the development and commercialization of cell-based medical technologies and therapies.

Regenerative medicine is rapidly progressing, in large part through the development of cell-based therapies or devices designed to isolate cells from human tissues. Most efforts involve cell sources, such as bone marrow, adipose tissue, embryonic and fetal tissue, umbilical cord and peripheral blood and skeletal muscle.

Many of our competitors and potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technological, research and development, marketing and personnel resources than we do. We cannot, with any accuracy, forecast when or if these companies are likely to bring their products and therapies to market in competition with those that we are pursuing.

With the enactment of the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, or BPCIA, an abbreviated pathway for the approval of biosimilar and interchangeable biological products was created. The abbreviated regulatory pathway establishes legal authority for the FDA to review and approve biosimilar biologics, including the possible designation of a biosimilar as “interchangeable” based on its similarity to an existing reference product. Under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product cannot be approved by the FDA until 12 years after the original branded product is approved under a biologics license application, or BLA. Although the FDA has approved several biosimilar products, complex provisions of the law are still being implemented by the FDA and interpreted by the federal courts. As a result, the ultimate impact, implementation, and meaning of the BPCIA are still subject to some uncertainty and FDA actions and court decisions concerning the law could have a material adverse effect on the future commercial prospects for our biological products.

We believe that, if any of our product candidates are approved as a biological product under a BLA, it should qualify for the 12-year period of exclusivity. However, there is a risk that the FDA could permit biosimilar applicants to reference approved biologics other than our therapeutic candidates, thus circumventing our exclusivity and potentially creating the opportunity for competition sooner than anticipated. Additionally, this period of regulatory exclusivity does not apply to companies pursuing regulatory approval via their own traditional BLA, rather than via the abbreviated pathway. Moreover, the extent to which a biosimilar, once approved, will be substituted for any one of our reference products in a way that is similar to traditional generic substitution for non-biological products is not yet clear, and will depend on a number of marketplace and regulatory factors that are still developing.

## Customers

Our cell and tissue therapeutic products are intended to be marketed to physicians, other health care professionals, hospitals, research institutions, pharmaceutical companies and the military. It is anticipated that physicians who are trained and skilled in performing spinal injections will be the physicians most likely to treat discs with injections of *BRTX-100*. These physicians would include interventional physiatrists (physical medicine physicians), pain management anesthesiologists, interventional radiologists and neurosurgeons.

## **Governmental Regulation**

### ***U.S. Government Regulation***

The health care industry is highly regulated in the United States. The federal government, through various departments and agencies, state and local governments, and private third-party accreditation organizations regulate and monitor the health care industry, associated products, and operations. The following is a general overview of the laws and regulations pertaining to our business.

#### *FDA Regulation of Stem Cell Treatment and Products*

The FDA regulates the manufacture of human stem cell treatments and associated products under the authority of the Public Health Service Act, or PHS Act, and the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA. Stem cells can be regulated under the FDA's Human Cells, Tissues, and Cellular and Tissue-Based Products Regulations, or HCT/Ps, or may also be subject to the FDA's drug, biological product, or medical device regulations, each as discussed below.

#### *Human Cells, Tissues, and Cellular and Tissue-Based Products Regulation*

Under Section 361 of the PHS Act, the FDA issued specific regulations governing the use of HCT/Ps in humans. Pursuant to Part 1271 of Title 21 of the Code of Federal Regulations, or CFR, the FDA established a unified registration and listing system for establishments that manufacture and process HCT/Ps. The regulations also include provisions pertaining to donor eligibility determinations; current good tissue practices covering all stages of production, including harvesting, processing, manufacture, storage, labeling, packaging, and distribution; and other procedures to prevent the introduction, transmission, and spread of communicable diseases.

The HCT/P regulations strictly constrain the types of products that may be regulated solely under these regulations. Factors considered include the degree of manipulation, whether the product is intended for a homologous function, whether the product has been combined with noncellular or non-tissue components, and the product's effect or dependence on the body's metabolic function. In those instances where cells, tissues, and cellular and tissue-based products have been only minimally manipulated, are intended strictly for homologous use, have not been combined with noncellular or nontissue substances, and do not depend on or have any effect on the body's metabolism, the manufacturer is only required to register with the FDA, submit a list of manufactured products, and adopt and implement procedures for the control of communicable diseases. If one or more of the above factors has been exceeded, the product would be regulated as a drug, biological product, or medical device rather than an HCT/P.

Because we are an enterprise in the early stages of operations and have not generated significant revenues from operations, it is difficult to anticipate the likely regulatory status of the array of products and services that we may offer. We believe that some of the adult autologous (self derived) stem cells that will be used in our cellular therapy products and services, including the brown adipose (fat) tissue that we intend to use in our *ThermoStem Program*, may be regulated by the FDA as HCT/Ps under 21 C.F.R. Part 1271. This regulation defines HCT/Ps as articles “containing or consisting of human cells or tissues that are intended for implantation, transplantation, infusion or transfer into a human recipient.” However, the FDA may disagree with this position or conclude that some or all of our stem cell therapy products or services do not meet the applicable definitions and exemptions to the regulation. If we are not regulated solely under the HCT/P provisions, we would need to expend significant resources to comply with the FDA’s broad regulatory authority under the FDCA. Third party litigation concerning the autologous use of a stem cell mixture to treat musculoskeletal and spinal injuries has increased the likelihood that some of our products and services are likely to be regulated as a drug or biological product and require FDA approval. In past litigation, the FDA asserted that the defendants’ use of cultured stem cells without FDA approval is in violation of the FDCA, claiming that the defendants’ product is a drug. The defendants asserted that their procedure is part of the practice of medicine and therefore beyond the FDA’s regulatory authority. The District Court ruled in favor of the FDA, and in February 2014 the Circuit Court affirmed the District Court’s holding.

If regulated solely under the FDA’s HCT/P statutory and regulatory provisions, once our laboratory in the United States becomes operational, it will need to satisfy the following requirements, among others, to process and store stem cells:

- registration and listing of HCT/Ps with the FDA;
- donor eligibility determinations, including donor screening and donor testing requirements;
- current good tissue practices, specifically including requirements for the facilities, environmental controls, equipment, supplies and reagents, recovery of HCT/Ps from the patient, processing, storage, labeling and document controls, and distribution and shipment of the HCT/Ps to the laboratory, storage, or other facility;
- tracking and traceability of HCT/Ps and equipment, supplies, and reagents used in the manufacture of HCT/Ps;
- adverse event reporting;
- FDA inspection; and
- abiding by any FDA order of retention, recall, destruction, and cessation of manufacturing of HCT/Ps.

Non-reproductive HCT/Ps and non-peripheral blood stem/progenitor cells that are offered for import into the United States and regulated solely under Section 361 of the PHSA must also satisfy the requirements under 21 C.F.R. § 1271.420. Section 1271.420 requires that the importer of record of HCT/Ps notify the FDA prior to, or at the time of, importation and provide sufficient information for the FDA to make an admissibility decision. In addition, the importer must hold the HCT/P intact and under conditions necessary to prevent transmission of communicable disease until an admissibility decision is made by the FDA.

If the FDA determines that we have failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can impose a variety of enforcement actions including public warning letters, fines, consent decrees, orders of retention, recall or destruction of product, orders to cease manufacturing, and criminal prosecution. If any of these events were to occur, it could materially adversely affect us.

To the extent that our cellular therapy activities are limited to developing products and services outside the United States, as described in detail below, the products and services would not be subject to FDA regulation, but will be subject to the applicable requirements of the foreign jurisdiction. We intend to comply with all applicable foreign governmental requirements.

#### *Drug and Biological Product Regulation*

An HCT/P product that does not meet the criteria for being solely regulated under Section 361 of the PHSA will be regulated as a drug, device or biological product under the FDCA and/or Section 351 of the PHSA, and applicable FDA regulations. The FDA has broad regulatory authority over drugs and biologics marketed for sale in the United States. The FDA regulates the research, clinical testing, manufacturing, safety, effectiveness, labeling, storage, recordkeeping, promotion, distribution, and production of drugs and biological products. The FDA also regulates the export of drugs and biological products manufactured in the United States to international markets in certain situations.

For products that are regulated as drugs, an investigational new drug, or IND, application and an approved new drug application, or NDA, are required before marketing and sale in the United States pursuant to the requirements of 21 C.F.R. Parts 312 and 314, respectively. An IND application notifies the FDA of prospective clinical testing and allows the test product to be shipped in interstate commerce. Approval of an NDA requires a showing that the drug is safe and effective for its intended use and that the methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacturing, processing, and packaging of the drug are adequate to preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity. If regulated as a biologic, the product must be subject to an IND to conduct clinical trials and a manufacturer must obtain an approved biologics license application, or BLA, before introducing a product into interstate commerce. To obtain a BLA, a manufacturer must show that the proposed product is safe, pure, and potent and that the facility in which the product is manufactured, processed, packed, or held meets established quality control standards.

Drug and biological products must also comply with applicable registration, product listing, and adverse event reporting requirements as well as the FDA's general prohibition against misbranding and adulteration. Additionally, the FDA actively enforces regulations prohibiting marketing and promotion of drugs and biologics for indications or uses that have not been approved by the FDA (i.e., "off label" promotion).

In the event that the FDA does not regulate our services in the United States solely under the HCT/P regulation, our products and activities could be regulated as drug or biological products under the FDCA. If regulated as drug or biological products, we will need to expend significant resources to ensure regulatory compliance. If an IND and NDA or BLA are required for any of our products, there is no assurance as to whether or when we will receive FDA approval of the product. The process of designing, conducting, compiling and submitting the non-clinical and clinical studies required for NDA or BLA approval is time-consuming, expensive and unpredictable. The process can take many years, depending on the product and the FDA's requirements.

If the FDA determines that we have failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can impose a variety of enforcement actions from public warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties to suspension or delayed issuance of approvals, seizure of our products, total or partial shutdown of our production, withdrawal of approvals, and criminal prosecutions. If any of these events were to occur, it could materially adversely affect us.

#### *Medical Device Regulation*

The FDA also has broad authority over the regulation of medical devices marketed for sale in the United States. The FDA regulates the research, clinical testing, manufacturing, safety, labeling, storage, recordkeeping, premarket clearance or approval, promotion, distribution, and production of medical devices. The FDA also regulates the export of medical devices manufactured in the United States to international markets.

Under the FDCA, medical devices are classified into one of three classes, Class I, Class II, or Class III, depending upon the degree of risk associated with the medical device and the extent of control needed to ensure safety and effectiveness. Class I devices are subject to the lowest degree of regulatory scrutiny because they are considered low risk devices and need only comply with the FDA's General Controls. The General Controls include compliance with the registration, listing, adverse event reporting requirements, and applicable portions of the Quality System Regulation as well as the general misbranding and adulteration prohibitions.

Class II devices are subject to the General Controls as well as certain Special Controls such as 510(k) premarket notification. Class III devices are subject to the highest degree of regulatory scrutiny and typically include life supporting and life sustaining devices and implants. They are subject to the General Controls and Special Controls that include a premarket approval application, or PMA. "New" devices are automatically regulated as Class III devices unless they are shown to be low risk, in which case they may be subject to de novo review to be moved to Class I or Class II. Clinical research of an investigational device is regulated under the investigational device exemption, or IDE, regulations of 21 C.F.R. Part 812. Nonsignificant risk devices are subject to abbreviated requirements that do not require a submission to the FDA but must have Institutional Review Board (IRB) approval and comply with other requirements pertaining to informed consent, labeling, recordkeeping, reporting, and monitoring. Significant risk devices require the submission of an IDE application to the FDA and the FDA's approval of the IDE application.

The FDA premarket clearance and approval process can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain. It generally takes three to twelve months from submission to obtain 510(k) premarket clearance, although it may take longer. Approval of a PMA could take one to four years, or more, from the time the application is submitted and there is no guarantee of ultimate clearance or approval. Securing FDA clearances and approvals may require the submission of extensive clinical data and supporting information to the FDA. Additionally, the FDA actively enforces regulations prohibiting marketing and promotion of devices for indications or uses that have not been cleared or approved by the FDA. In addition, modifications or enhancements of products that could affect the safety or effectiveness or effect a major change in the intended use of a device that was either cleared through the 510(k) process or approved through the PMA process may require further FDA review through new 510(k) or PMA submissions.

In the event we develop processes, products or services which qualify as medical devices subject to FDA regulation, we intend to comply with such regulations. If the FDA determines that our products are regulated as medical devices and we have failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can impose a variety of enforcement actions from public warning letters, application integrity proceedings, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties to suspension or delayed issuance of approvals, seizure of our products, total or partial shutdown of our production, withdrawal of approvals, and criminal prosecutions. If any of these events were to occur, it could materially adversely affect us.

#### *Current Good Manufacturing Practices and other FDA Regulations of Cellular Therapy Products*

Products that fall outside of the HCT/P regulations and are regulated as drugs, biological products, or devices must comply with applicable good manufacturing practice regulations. The current Good Manufacturing Practices, or cGMPs regulations for drug products are found in 21 C.F.R. Parts 210 and 211; the General Biological Product Standards for biological products are found in 21 C.F.R. Part 610; and the Quality System Regulation for medical devices are found in 21 C.F.R. Part 820. These cGMPs and quality standards are designed to ensure the products that are processed at a facility meet the FDA's applicable requirements for identity, strength, quality, sterility, purity, and safety. In the event that our domestic United States operations are subject to the FDA's drug, biological product, or device regulations, we intend to comply with the applicable cGMPs and quality regulations.

If the FDA determines that we have failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can impose a variety of enforcement actions from public warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties to suspension or delayed issuance of approvals, seizure of our products, total or partial shutdown of our production, withdrawal of approvals, and criminal prosecutions. If any of these events were to occur, it could materially adversely affect us.

#### *Good Laboratory Practices*

The FDA prescribes good laboratory practices, or GLPs, for conducting nonclinical laboratory studies that support applications for research or marketing permits for products regulated by the FDA. These regulations are published in Part 58 of Title 21 of the CFR. GLPs are intended to assure the quality and integrity of the safety data filed in research and marketing permits. GLPs provide requirements for organization, personnel, facilities, equipment, testing facilities operation, test and control articles, protocol for nonclinical laboratory study, records, reports, and disqualification by the FDA. To the extent that we are required to, or the above regulation applies, we intend that our nonclinical studies that are intended to support FDA submissions will comply with GLPs.

#### *Promotion of Foreign-Based Cellular Therapy Treatment— "Medical Tourism"*

We may establish, or license technology to third parties in connection with their establishment of, adult stem cell therapy facilities outside the United States. We also intend to work with hospitals and physicians to make the stem cell-based therapies available for patients who travel outside the United States for treatment. "Medical tourism" is defined as the practice of traveling across international borders to obtain health care.

The Federal Trade Commission, or the FTC, has the authority to regulate and police advertising of medical treatments, procedures, and regimens in the United States under the Federal Trade Commission Act, or the FTCA. Under Sections 5(a) and 12 of the FTCA (15 U.S.C. §§45(a) and 52), the FTC has regulatory authority to prevent unfair and deceptive practices and false advertising. Specifically, the FTC requires advertisers and promoters to have a reasonable basis to substantiate and support claims. The FTC has many enforcement powers, one of which is the power to order disgorgement by promoters deemed in violation of the FTCA of any profits made from the promoted business and can order injunctions from further violative promotion. Advertising that we may utilize in connection with our medical tourism operations will be subject to FTC regulatory authority, and we intend to comply with such regulatory régime. Similar laws and requirements are likely to exist in other countries and we intend to comply with such requirements.

### ***Federal Regulation of Clinical Laboratories***

Congress passed the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments, or CLIA, in 1988, which provided the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, or CMS, authority over all laboratory testing, except research, that is performed on humans in the United States. The Division of Laboratory Services, within the Survey and Certification Group, under the Center for Medicaid and State Operations, or CMSO, has the responsibility for implementing the CLIA program.

The CLIA program is designed to establish quality laboratory testing by ensuring the accuracy, reliability, and timeliness of patient test results. Under CLIA, a laboratory is a facility that does laboratory testing on specimens derived from humans and used to provide information for the diagnosis, prevention, treatment of disease, or impairment of, or assessment of health. Laboratories that handle stem cells and other biologic matter are, therefore, included under the CLIA program. Under the CLIA program, laboratories must be certified by the government, satisfy governmental quality and personnel standards, undergo proficiency testing, be subject to inspections, and pay fees. The failure to comply with CLIA standards could result in suspension, revocation, or limitation of a laboratory's CLIA certificate. In addition, fines or criminal penalties could also be levied. To the extent that our business activities require CLIA certification, we intend to obtain and maintain such certification.

### ***Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act—Protection of Patient Health Information***

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, included the *Administrative Simplification* provisions that required the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, to adopt regulations for the electronic exchange, privacy, and security of individually identifiable health information that HIPAA protects (called "protected health information"). HHS published the *Standards for Privacy of Individually Identifiable Health Information*, or the Privacy Rule, and the *Security Standards for the Protection of Electronic Protected Health Information*, or the Security Rule, to protect the privacy and security of protected health information. The Privacy Rule specifies the required, permitted and prohibited uses and disclosures of an individual's protected health information by health plans, health care clearinghouses, and any health care provider that transmits health information in electronic format (referred to as "covered entities"). The Security Rule establishes a national security standard for safeguarding protected health information that is held or transferred in electronic form (referred to as "electronic protected health information"). The Security Rule addresses the technical and non-technical safeguards that covered entities must implement to secure individuals' electronic protected health information.



In addition to covered entities, the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or the HITECH Act, made certain provisions of the Security Rule, as well as the additional requirements the HITECH Act imposed that relate to security or privacy and that are imposed on covered entities, directly applicable as a matter of law to individuals and entities that perform permitted functions on behalf of covered entities when those functions involve the use or disclosure of protected health information. These individuals and entities are called “business associates.” Covered entities are required to enter into a contract with business associates, called a “business associate agreement,” that also imposes many of the Privacy Rule requirements on business associates as a matter of contract.

Regulations implementing the majority of the requirements created by the HITECH Act were issued in January 2013 (we refer to these regulations as the Final Rule). Among other things, the Final Rule broadened the definition of “business associate” to include subcontractors. As a result, a subcontractor who performs tasks involving the use or disclosure of protected health information on behalf of a business associate must likewise comply with the same obligations as the business associate.

The HITECH Act also established notification requirements in the event that a breach of the protected health information occurs at a covered entity or business associate. These notification obligations mandate that each affected individual whose protected health information was impermissibly accessed receive written notification mailed to his residence of record and that the Secretary of HHS and potentially the media also be notified. HHS, through its Office for Civil Rights, investigates breach reports and determines whether administrative or technical modifications are required and whether civil or criminal sanctions should be imposed. Companies failing to comply with HIPAA and the implementing regulations may also be subject to civil money penalties or in the case of knowing violations, potential criminal penalties, including monetary fines, imprisonment, or both. In some cases, the State Attorneys General may seek enforcement and appropriate sanctions in federal court.

To the extent that we are a covered entity or a business associate of a covered entity, we must comply with HIPAA and the implementing regulations. We must also comply with other additional federal or state privacy laws and regulations that may apply to certain diagnoses, such as HIV/AIDS, to the extent that they apply to us.

#### ***Other Applicable U.S. Laws***

In addition to the above-described regulation by United States federal and state government, the following are other federal and state laws and regulations that could directly or indirectly affect our ability to operate the business:

- state and local licensure, registration, and regulation of the development of pharmaceuticals and biologics;
- state and local licensure of medical professionals;
- state statutes and regulations related to the corporate practice of medicine;

- laws and regulations administered by U.S. Customs and Border Protection related to the importation of biological material into the United States;
- other laws and regulations administered by the FDA;
- other laws and regulations administered by HHS;
- state and local laws and regulations governing human subject research and clinical trials;
- the federal physician self-referral prohibition, also known as Stark Law, and any state equivalents to Stark Law;
- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and any state equivalent statutes and regulations;
- federal and state coverage and reimbursement laws and regulations;
- state and local laws and regulations for the disposal and handling of medical waste and biohazardous material;
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration, or OSHA, regulations and requirements;
- the Intermediate Sanctions rules of the IRS providing for potential financial sanctions with respect to “excess benefit transactions” with tax-exempt organizations;
- the Physician Payments Sunshine Act (in the event that our products are classified as drugs, biologics, devices or medical supplies and are reimbursed by Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program); and
- state and other federal laws addressing the privacy of health information.

***Foreign Government Regulation***

In general, we will need to comply with the government regulations of each individual country in which our therapy centers are located and products are to be distributed and sold. These regulations vary in complexity and can be as stringent, and on occasion even more stringent, than FDA regulations in the United States. Due to the fact that there are new and emerging cell therapy regulations that have recently been drafted and/or implemented in various countries around the world, the application and subsequent implementation of these new and emerging regulations have little to no precedence. Therefore, the level of complexity and stringency is not always precisely understood for each country, creating greater uncertainty for the international regulatory process. Furthermore, government regulations can change with little to no notice and may result in up-regulation of our product(s), thereby creating a greater regulatory burden for our cell processing technology products. We have not yet thoroughly explored the applicable laws and regulations that we will need to comply with in foreign jurisdictions. It is possible that we may not be permitted to expand our business into one or more foreign jurisdictions.

We do not have any definitive plans or arrangements with respect to the establishment by us of stem cell therapy clinics in any country. We intend to explore any such opportunities as they arise.

**Offices**

Our principal executive offices are located at 40 Marcus Drive, Melville, New York, and our telephone number is (631) 760-8100. Our website is www.biorestorative.com. Our internet website and the information contained therein or connected thereto are not intended to be incorporated by reference into this Annual Report.

**Employees**

We currently have nine employees all of whom are full-time employees. We believe that our employee relations are good.

**ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS.**

Not applicable. See, however, Item 7 (“Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations - Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition”).

**ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS.**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 2. PROPERTIES.**

Our principal executive offices and laboratory are located at 40 Marcus Drive, Melville, New York. We occupy 6,800 square feet of space at the premises pursuant to a lease that was entered into in August 2014 and expires in March 2020; we have an option to extend the term of the lease for five years. The lease provides for an annual base rental during the initial term ranging between \$132,600 and \$149,260. Our premises are suitable and adequate for our current operations.

**ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS.**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES.**

Not applicable.

## PART II

### ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES.

#### **Market Information**

Transactions in our common stock are currently reported under the symbol "BRTX" on the OTCQB market. The following table sets forth the range of high and low bids reported in the over-the-counter market for our common stock. The prices shown below represent prices in the market between dealers in securities; they do not include retail markup, markdown or commissions, and do not necessarily represent actual transactions.

	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
<b>2016 Calendar Year</b>		
First Quarter	\$ 4.45	\$ 2.61
Second Quarter	\$ 4.48	\$ 3.40
Third Quarter	\$ 3.91	\$ 2.71
Fourth Quarter	\$ 3.68	\$ 2.90
<b>2017 Calendar Year</b>		
First Quarter	\$ 5.01	\$ 3.00
Second Quarter	\$ 4.75	\$ 2.85
Third Quarter	\$ 3.80	\$ 2.70
Fourth Quarter	\$ 3.70	\$ 2.50

#### **Holders**

As of March 29, 2018, there were 299 record holders of our shares of common stock.

#### **Dividends**

Holders of our shares of common stock are entitled to dividends when, as and if declared by our Board of Directors out of funds legally available.

We have not declared or paid any dividends in the past to the holders of our common stock and do not currently anticipate declaring or paying any dividends in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain earnings, if any, to finance the development and expansion of our business. Future dividend policy will be subject to the discretion of our Board of Directors and will be contingent upon future earnings, if any, our financial condition, capital requirements, general business conditions, and other factors. Therefore, we can give no assurance that any dividends of any kind will ever be paid to holders of our common shares.

## Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

During the three months ended December 31, 2017, we issued the following securities in transactions not involving any public offering. For each of the following transactions, we relied upon Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, as transactions by an issuer not involving any public offering or Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act as a security exchanged by an issuer with its existing security holders exclusively where no commission or other remuneration is paid or given directly or indirectly for soliciting such exchange. For each such transaction, we did not use general solicitation or advertising to market the securities, the securities were offered to a limited number of persons, the investors had access to information regarding us (including information contained in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the periods ended March 31, 2017, June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2017 and Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, and press releases made by us), and we were available to answer questions by prospective investors. We reasonably believe that each of the investors is an accredited investor. The proceeds were used to reduce our working capital deficiency and for other corporate purposes.

Date Issued	Common Stock	Warrants			Purchaser(s)	Consideration (1)
		Shares	Exercise Price	Term (Years)		
10/2/2017	2,500	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 5,000(3)
10/16/2017	1,800	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 3,600(3)
10/23/2017	12,728	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 26,219(4)
10/26/2017	6,161	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 15,000(4)
11/6/2017-11//27/2017	20,000	20,000	\$ 4.00	5	(2)	\$ 60,000(5)
11/8/2017	7,800	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 13,645(6)
11/8/2017	12,410	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 26,308(4)
11/21/2017	12,818	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 26,404(4)
12/6/2017	13,947	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 26,500(4)
12/8/2017	6,227	-	-	-	(2)	\$ 15,000(4)
12/12/2017-12/27/2017	410,625	102,656	\$ 4.00	2	(2)	\$ 821,250(7)

- (1) The value of the non-cash consideration was estimated to be the fair value of our restricted common stock. Since our shares are thinly traded in the open market, the fair value of our equity instruments was estimated by management based on observations of the cash sales prices of both restricted shares and freely tradable shares.
- (2) Accredited investor.
- (3) Issued in connection with a note payable maturity extension.
- (4) Issued in connection with the conversion of convertible notes payable.
- (5) Issued for cash consideration.

- (6) Issued in connection with issuance of debt.
- (7) Issued in connection with warrant exercises.

#### **Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities**

During the quarter ended December 31, 2017, there were no purchases of common stock made by us or any “affiliated purchaser”.

#### **ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA.**

Not applicable.

#### **ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS.**

*The following discussion and analysis of the results of operations and financial condition of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (and including its subsidiaries, “BRT” or the “Company”) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 should be read in conjunction with our financial statements and the notes to those financial statements that are included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K following Item 16. References in this Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations to “us,” “we,” “our,” and similar terms refer to BRT. This Annual Report contains forward-looking statements as that term is defined in the federal securities laws. The events described in forward-looking statements contained in this Annual Report may not occur. Generally these statements relate to business plans or strategies, projected or anticipated benefits or other consequences of our plans or strategies, projected or anticipated benefits from acquisitions to be made by us, or projections involving anticipated revenues, earnings or other aspects of our operating results. The words “may,” “will,” “expect,” “believe,” “anticipate,” “project,” “plan,” “intend,” “estimate,” and “continue,” and their opposites and similar expressions, are intended to identify forward-looking statements. We caution you that these statements are not guarantees of future performance or events and are subject to a number of uncertainties, risks and other influences, many of which are beyond our control, which may influence the accuracy of the statements and the projections upon which the statements are based. Reference is made to “Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition” in this Item 7 for a discussion of some of the uncertainties, risks and assumptions associated with these statements.*

#### **Overview**

We develop therapeutic products and medical therapies using cell and tissue protocols, primarily involving adult (non-embryonic) stem cells. We are currently pursuing our Disc/Spine Program with our initial therapeutic product being called BRTX-100. In January 2017 we announced that we had submitted an IND application to the FDA to obtain authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using our lead cell therapy candidate, BRTX-100, to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs. In February 2017, we received such authorization from the FDA. We intend to commence such clinical trial during the third or fourth quarter of 2018 (assuming the receipt of necessary funding). We have obtained a license to use technology for adult stem cell treatment of disc and spine conditions, including protruding and bulging lumbar discs. The technology is an advanced stem cell injection procedure that may offer relief from lower back pain, buttock and leg pain, and numbness and tingling in the legs and feet. We are also developing our ThermoStem Program. This pre-clinical program involves the use of brown adipose (fat) in connection with the cell-based treatment of type 2 diabetes and obesity as well as hypertension, other metabolic disorders and cardiac deficiencies. A United States patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in September 2015, an Australian patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in August 2017, and a Japanese patent related to the *ThermoStem Program* was issued in December 2017.

We have licensed a patented curved needle device that is a needle system designed to deliver cells and/or other therapeutic products or materials to the spine and discs.

Our offices are located in Melville, New York where we have established a laboratory facility in order to increase our capabilities for the further development of possible cellular-based treatments, products and protocols, stem cell-related intellectual property and translational research applications.

As of December 31, 2017, our accumulated deficit was \$51,404,453, our stockholders' deficiency was \$6,836,568 and our working capital deficiency was \$7,833,592. We have historically only generated a modest amount of revenue, and our losses have principally been operating expenses incurred in research and development, marketing and promotional activities in order to commercialize our products and services, plus costs associated with meeting the requirements of being a public company. We expect to continue to incur substantial costs for these activities over at least the next year. These conditions indicate that there is substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the financial statement issuance date.

Based upon our working capital deficiency as of December 31, 2017, and our forecast for continued operating losses, we require equity and/or debt financing to continue our operations. As of December 31, 2017, our outstanding debt of \$3,999,335, together with interest at rates ranging between 0% and 15% per annum, was due on various dates through December 2018. Subsequent to December 31, 2017, we have received aggregate equity financing (representing proceeds received from the exercise of common stock purchase warrants) and debt financing of \$452,168 and \$420,500, respectively, debt (inclusive of accrued interest) of \$207,993 has been converted into or exchanged for common stock, \$119,583 of debt has been repaid, and the due date for the repayment of \$788,982 of debt has been extended to dates between March 2018 and August 2018. Giving effect to the above actions, we currently have notes payable aggregating \$598,500 which are past due. Based upon our working capital deficiency and outstanding debt, we expect to be able to fund our operations through April 2018 while we continue to apply efforts to raise additional capital. We anticipate that we will require approximately \$20,000,000 in financing to commence and complete a Phase 2 clinical trial with regard to our *Disc/Spine Program*. We anticipate that we will require approximately \$45,000,000 in further additional funding to complete our clinical trials using *BRTX-100* (assuming the receipt of no revenues). We will also require a substantial amount of additional funding if we determine to establish a manufacturing operation with regard to our *Disc/Spine Program* (as opposed to utilizing a third party manufacturer) and to implement our other programs, described in Item 1 ("Business"), including our metabolic *ThermoStem Program*. No assurance can be given that the anticipated amounts of required funding are correct or that we will be able to accomplish our goals within the timeframes projected. In addition, no assurance can be given that we will be able to obtain any required financing on commercially reasonable terms or otherwise.

We are currently seeking several different financing alternatives to support our future operations and are currently in the process of negotiating extensions or discussing conversions to equity with respect to our outstanding indebtedness. If we are unable to obtain such additional financing on a timely basis or, notwithstanding any request we may make, our debt holders do not agree to convert their notes into equity or extend the maturity dates of their notes, we may have to curtail our development, marketing and promotional activities, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, and ultimately we could be forced to discontinue our operations and liquidate. See “Liquidity and Capital Resources” below.

## Consolidated Results of Operations

### Year Ended December 31, 2017 Compared with Year Ended December 31, 2016

The following table presents selected items in our consolidated statements of operations for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively:

	For the Years Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 81,000	\$ 36,355
Cost of sales	-	102
Gross Profit	<u>81,000</u>	<u>36,253</u>
<b>Operating Expenses</b>		
Marketing and promotion	65,455	86,451
Consulting	2,334,212	1,605,917
Research and development	2,152,433	2,883,563
General and administrative	3,903,184	3,245,397
Total Operating Expenses	<u>8,455,284</u>	<u>7,821,328</u>
Loss From Operations	<u>(8,374,284)</u>	<u>(7,785,075)</u>
<b>Other (Expense) Income</b>		
Interest expense	(468,107)	(221,608)
Amortization of debt discount	(619,266)	(542,336)
Loss on extinguishment of notes payable, net	(59,938)	(58,787)
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	107,039	-
Warrant modification expense	<u>(30,099)</u>	<u>(28,486)</u>
Total Other Expense	<u>\$ (1,070,371)</u>	<u>\$ (851,217)</u>
<b>Net Loss</b>	<u>\$ (9,444,655)</u>	<u>\$ (8,636,292)</u>



### *Revenues*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, we generated \$81,000 from royalty revenue in connection with our sublicense agreement. For the year ended December 31, 2016, we generated \$36,000 from royalty revenue in connection with our sublicense agreement and \$355 from sales of *Stem Pearls* skincare products. The increase in our revenues for the year ended December 31, 2017 versus 2016 was due to an increase in royalty revenue in connection with our sublicense agreement.

### *Cost of sales*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, cost of sales was \$0 as compared to \$102 for 2016. For the year ended December 31, 2016, cost of sales consisted of the costs of the underlying *Stem Pearls* skincare products.

### *Gross profit*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, gross profit increased to \$81,000 (100% of revenues) as compared to \$36,253 (approximately 100% of revenues) for the year ended December 31, 2016, due to an increase in royalty revenue in connection with our sublicense agreement.

### *Marketing and promotion*

Marketing and promotion expenses include advertising and promotion, marketing and seminars, meals, entertainment and travel expenses. For the year ended December 31, 2017, marketing and promotion expenses decreased by \$20,996, or 24%, to \$65,455 from \$86,451, for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease is primarily due to reduced travel activity and associated costs of approximately \$38,000, partially offset by an increase in approximately \$17,000 of costs associated with advertising and promotions with OTC Markets and a Japanese press release.

We expect that marketing and promotion expenses will increase in the future as we increase our marketing activities following full commercialization of our products and services.

### *Consulting*

Consulting expenses consist of consulting fees and stock-based compensation to consultants. For the year ended December 31, 2017, consulting expenses increased \$728,295, or 45%, to \$2,334,212 from \$1,605,917, for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase is primarily due to an increase of approximately \$703,000 in stock-based compensation expense related to options granted to directors and consultants and an increase of approximately \$25,000 in other cash consulting fees.

### *Research and development*

Research and development expenses include cash and non-cash compensation of (a) our Vice President of Research and Development; (b) our Scientific Advisory Board members; (c) our President, Disc/Spine Division (who resigned in July 2017); and (d) laboratory staff and costs related to our brown fat and disc/spine initiatives. Research and development expenses are expensed as they are incurred. For the year ended December 31, 2017, research and development expenses decreased by \$731,130 or 25%, to \$2,152,433 from \$2,883,563, for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease was primarily a result of an approximately \$349,000 decrease in costs related to a third party laboratory associated with the completion of our animal study for our disc/spine initiative in 2016, a decrease of approximately \$136,000 in payroll and payroll-related costs due to the resignation of our former President of the Disc/Spine Division, a decrease of approximately \$70,000 related to the reversal of previously accrued 2017 bonus milestones that are no longer probable to be achieved, a decrease of approximately \$92,000 of medical supplies in connection with a previous stock up of supplies in 2016, all partially offset by approximately \$97,000 of 2016 bonus milestones achieved in 2017.

We expect that our research and development expenses will increase with the continuation of the aforementioned initiatives.

### *General and administrative*

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries, bonuses, payroll taxes, severance costs and stock-based compensation to employees (excluding any cash or non-cash compensation of (a) our Vice President of Research and Development; (b) our President, Disc/Spine Division; and (c) our laboratory staff) as well as corporate support expenses such as legal and professional fees, investor relations and occupancy related expenses. For the year ended December 31, 2017, general and administrative expenses increased by \$657,787, or 20%, to \$3,903,184 from \$3,245,397, for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase is primarily related to approximately \$372,000 in stock-based compensation to employees and our Chief Executive Officer, an increased amount of options outstanding that are being amortized, an increase in professional fees of approximately \$225,000 in connection with patent applications and an increase in professional fees of approximately \$71,000 associated with capital raising efforts.

We expect that our general and administrative expenses will increase as we expand our staff, develop our infrastructure and incur additional costs to support the growth of our business.

### *Interest expense*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, interest expense increased by \$246,499, or 111%, to \$468,107 as compared to \$221,608 during the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was due to an increase in interest-bearing short-term borrowings as compared to the year ended December 31, 2016.

### *Amortization of debt discount*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, amortization of debt discount increased by \$76,930 or 14%, to \$619,266 as compared to \$542,336 during the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily due to the timing of the recognition of expense related to the beneficial conversion features of convertible notes and the recognition of the debt discount expense.

*Loss on extinguishment of notes payable, net*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded a loss on extinguishment of notes payable, net, of \$59,938, which is associated with investors' exchange of debt into equity securities, as compared to a loss on extinguishment of notes payable of \$58,787 for the year ended December 31, 2016.

*Change in fair value of derivative liabilities*

For the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded a gain related to the change in fair value of derivative liabilities of \$107,039 due to the decline in time value of embedded conversion options within certain convertible notes payable. There were no embedded conversion options that were classified as derivative liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2016.

*Warrant modification expense*

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded expense related to the modification of the expiration dates and exercise prices of outstanding warrants of \$30,099, as compared to expense related to the modification of outstanding warrants of \$28,486 for the year ended December 31, 2016.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources**

***Liquidity***

We measure our liquidity in a number of ways, including the following:

	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Cash	\$ 451,680	\$ 31,822
Working Capital Deficiency	\$ (7,833,592)	\$ (5,783,184)
Notes Payable (Gross)	\$ 3,999,335	\$ 2,336,565

***Availability of Additional Funds***

Based upon our working capital and stockholders' deficiencies of \$7,833,592 and \$6,836,568, respectively, as of December 31, 2017, we require additional equity and/or debt financing to continue our operations. These conditions raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

As of December 31, 2017, our outstanding debt of \$3,999,335, together with interest at rates ranging between 0% and 15% per annum, was due on various dates through December 2018. Subsequent to December 31, 2017, we have received aggregate equity financing (representing proceeds received from the exercise of common stock purchase warrants) and debt financing of \$452,168 and \$420,500, respectively, debt (inclusive of accrued interest) of \$207,993 has been converted into or exchanged for common stock, \$119,583 of debt has been repaid, and the due date for the repayment of \$788,982 of debt has been extended to dates between March 2018 and August 2018. Giving effect to the above actions, we currently have notes payable aggregating \$598,500 which are past due. As of the date of filing, our outstanding debt was as follows:

Maturity Date	Principal Amount
Past Due	\$ 598,500
QE 3/31/18	-
QE 6/30/18	1,623,749
QE 9/30/18	501,233
QE 12/31/18	1,432,730
	<u>\$ 4,156,212</u>

Based upon our working capital deficiency, outstanding debt and forecast for continued operating losses we expect that the cash we currently have available will fund our operations through April 2018 while we continue to apply efforts to raise additional capital. Thereafter, we will need to raise further capital, through the sale of additional equity or debt securities, to support our future operations and to repay our debt (unless, if requested, the debt holders agree to convert their notes into equity or extend the maturity dates of their notes). Our operating needs include the planned costs to operate our business, including amounts required to fund working capital and capital expenditures. Our future capital requirements and the adequacy of our available funds will depend on many factors, including our ability to successfully commercialize our products and services, competing technological and market developments, and the need to enter into collaborations with other companies or acquire other companies or technologies to enhance or complement our product and service offerings.

We may be unable to raise sufficient additional capital when we need it or raise capital on favorable terms. Debt financing may require us to pledge certain assets and enter into covenants that could restrict certain business activities or our ability to incur further indebtedness, and may contain other terms that are not favorable to our stockholders or us. If we are unable to obtain adequate funds on reasonable terms, we may be required to significantly curtail or discontinue operations or obtain funds by entering into financing agreements on unattractive terms.

Our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or U.S. GAAP, which contemplate our continuation as a going concern and the realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the normal course of business. The carrying amounts of assets and liabilities presented in the financial statements do not necessarily purport to represent realizable or settlement values. The financial statements do not include any adjustment that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, our sources and uses of cash were as follows:

### ***Net Cash Used in Operating Activities***

We experienced negative cash flow from operating activities for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 in the amounts of \$3,853,821 and \$5,002,675, respectively. The net cash used in operating activities for the year ended December 31, 2017 was primarily due to cash used to fund a net loss of \$9,444,655, adjusted for non-cash expenses in the aggregate amount of \$4,769,506 partially offset by \$821,328 of cash provided by changes in the levels of operating assets and liabilities, primarily as a result of increases in accrued interest, expenses and other current liabilities, increases in accounts payable, a decrease in security deposit and decreases in prepaid expenses and other current assets, partially offset by increases in accounts receivable, primarily due to cash constraints during the period. The net cash used in operating activities for the year ended December 31, 2016 was primarily due to cash used to fund a net loss of \$8,636,292, adjusted for non-cash expenses in the aggregate amount of \$3,452,689, partially offset by \$180,928 of cash provided by changes in the levels of operating assets and liabilities, primarily as a result of increases in accrued interest, expenses and other current liabilities and a decrease in accounts receivable, partially offset by a decrease in accounts payable, primarily due to cash constraints during the period.

### ***Net Cash Used in Investing Activities***

During the year ended December 31, 2017, net cash used in investing activities was \$3,617 used for the purchase of computer equipment. During the year ended December 31, 2016, net cash used in investing activities was \$188,764 used for the purchase of furniture, computer equipment and medical equipment.

### ***Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities***

Net cash provided by financing activities during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was \$4,277,296 and \$5,056,706, respectively. During the year ended December 31, 2017, \$2,197,046 of net proceeds were from debt financings and other borrowings and \$2,080,250 of proceeds were from equity financings (including proceeds received in connection with the exercise of common stock purchase warrants). During the year ended December 31, 2016, \$1,345,470 of net proceeds were from debt financings and \$3,711,236 of proceeds were from equity financings (including proceeds received in connection with the exercise of common stock purchase warrants).

### **Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

#### *Use of Estimates*

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent liabilities at dates of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the periods. Our significant estimates and assumptions include the recoverability and useful lives of long-lived assets, the fair value of our equity securities and the valuation allowance related to our deferred tax assets. Certain of our estimates, including the carrying amount of the intangible assets, could be affected by external conditions, including those unique to us and general economic conditions. It is reasonably possible that these external factors could have an effect on our estimates and could cause actual results to differ from those estimates.

### *Intangible Assets*

Intangible assets are comprised of trademarks and licenses with original estimated useful lives of 10 and 17.7 years, respectively. Once placed into service, we amortize the cost of the intangible assets over their estimated useful lives on a straight-line basis.

### *Impairment of Long-lived Assets*

We review for the impairment of long-lived assets whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. An impairment loss would be recognized when estimated future cash flows expected to result from the use of the asset and its eventual disposition are less than its carrying amount. While our near term liquidity is tight, historically we have been successful in raising capital as needed (although there can be no assurance that we will continue to be successful in raising capital as needed). We continue to progress our scientific agenda and meet related milestones. We have not identified any impairment losses.

### *Income Taxes*

We recognize deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of items that have been included or excluded in our financial statements or tax returns. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined on the basis of the difference between the tax basis of assets and liabilities and their respective financial reporting amounts, or temporary differences, at enacted tax rates in effect for the years in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse.

We adopted the provisions of Accounting Standards Codification, or ASC, Topic 740-10, which prescribes a recognition threshold and measurement process for financial statements recognition and measurement of a tax position taken or expected to be taken in a tax return.

### *Stock-Based Compensation*

We measure the cost of services received in exchange for an award of equity instruments based on the fair value of the award. For employees and directors, the fair value of the award is measured on the grant date and for non-employees, the fair value of the award is generally re-measured on vesting dates and interim financial reporting dates until the service period is complete. The fair value amount is then recognized over the period during which services are required to be provided in exchange for the award, usually the vesting period. Since the shares underlying our 2010 Equity Participation Plan, or the Plan, were registered on May 27, 2014, we estimate the fair value of the awards granted under the Plan based on the market value of our freely tradable common stock as reported on the OTCQB market. The fair value of our restricted equity instruments was estimated by management based on observations of the cash sales prices of both restricted shares and freely tradable shares. Awards granted to directors are treated on the same basis as awards granted to employees.

### **Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements**

See Note 3 to our consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017.

## Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to investors.

## Factors That May Affect Future Results and Financial Condition

The risk factors listed in this section provide examples of risks, uncertainties and events that may cause our actual results to differ materially from the expectations we describe in our forward-looking statements. Readers should be aware that the occurrence of any of the events described in these risk factors could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. We undertake no obligation to update or revise publicly any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events, or otherwise.

## Risks Related to Our Business Generally

***We have a limited operating history; we have incurred substantial losses since inception; we expect to continue to incur losses for the near term; we have a substantial working capital deficiency and a stockholders' deficiency; we believe these conditions indicate that there is substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern within the next twelve months from the date of this filing; the report of our independent registered public accounting firm contains an explanatory paragraph that expresses substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.***

We have a limited operating history. Since our inception, we have incurred net losses. As of December 31, 2017, we had a working capital deficiency of \$7,833,592 and stockholders' deficiency of \$6,836,568. The report of our independent registered public accounting firm with respect to our financial statements as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years then ended indicates that our financial statements have been prepared assuming that we will continue as a going concern. The report states that, since we have incurred net losses since inception and we need to raise additional funds to meet our obligations and sustain our operations, there is substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. Our plans in regard to these matters are described in footnote 2 to our audited financial statements as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years then ended, which are included following Item 16 ("Form 10-K Summary"). Our financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

***We will need to obtain a significant amount of financing to initiate and complete our clinical trials and implement our business plan.***

Since our inception, we have not generated significant revenues from our operations and have funded our operations through the sale of our equity securities (approximately \$15,000,000) and debt securities (approximately \$15,000,000). The implementation of our business plan, as discussed in Item 1 ("Business"), will require the receipt of sufficient equity and/or debt financing to purchase necessary equipment, technology and materials, fund our research and development efforts, retire our outstanding debt and otherwise fund our operations. We anticipate that we will require approximately \$20,000,000 in financing to commence and complete a Phase 2 clinical trial using *BRTX-100*. We anticipate that we will require approximately \$45,000,000 in further additional funding to complete our clinical trials using *BRTX-100* (assuming the receipt of no revenues). We will also require a substantial amount of additional funding if we determine to establish a manufacturing operation with regard to our *Disc/Spine Program* (as opposed to utilizing a third party manufacturer) and to implement our other programs described in Item 1 ("Business"), including our metabolic *ThermoStem Program*. No assurance can be given that the anticipated amounts of required funding are correct or that we will be able to accomplish our goals within the timeframes projected. In addition, no assurance can be given that we will be able to obtain any required financing on commercially reasonable terms or otherwise. In the event we do not obtain the financing required for the above purposes, we may have to curtail our development, marketing and promotional activities, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, and ultimately we could be forced to discontinue our operations and liquidate.

***We will need to obtain additional financing to satisfy debt obligations.***

As described in Item 7 (“Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Liquidity and Capital Resources – Availability of Additional Funds”), as of December 31, 2017, our outstanding debt of \$3,999,335, together with interest at rates ranging between 0% and 15% per annum, are due on various dates through December 2018. Subsequent to December 31, 2017, we have received aggregate equity financing (representing proceeds received from the exercise of common stock purchase warrants) and debt financing of \$452,168 and \$420,500, respectively, debt (inclusive of accrued interest) of \$207,993 has been converted into or exchanged for common stock, \$119,583 of debt has been repaid, and the due date for the repayment of \$788,982 of debt has been extended to dates between March 2018 and August 2018. Giving effect to the above actions, we currently have notes payable aggregating \$598,500 which are past due. As of March 29, 2018, the outstanding balance of our debt of \$4,156,212, together with accrued interest, was due and payable either on demand or on various dates through December 2018. Unless we obtain additional financing or, upon our request, the debt holders agree to convert their debt into equity or extend the maturity dates of the debt, we will not be able to repay such debt. Based upon our working capital deficiency and outstanding debt, we expect to be able to fund our operations through April 2018, while we continue to apply efforts to raise additional capital. Even if we are able to satisfy our debt obligations, our cash balance and the revenues for the foreseeable future from our anticipated operations will not be sufficient to fund the development of our business plan.

***Our business strategy is high risk.***

We are focusing our resources and efforts primarily on the development of cellular-based products and services which will require extensive cash for research, development and commercialization activities. This is a high-risk strategy because there is no assurance that our products and services, including our *Disc/Spine Program* and our *ThermoStem* metabolic brown fat research initiative, will ever become commercially viable (commercial risk), that we will prevent other companies from depriving us of market share and profit margins by offering services and products based on our inventions and developments (legal risk), that we will successfully manage a company in a new area of business, regenerative medicine, and on a different scale than we have operated in the past (operational risk), that we will be able to achieve the desired therapeutic results using stem and regenerative cells (scientific risk), or that our cash resources will be adequate to develop our products and services until we become profitable, if ever (financial risk). We are using our cash in one of the riskiest industries in the economy (strategic risk). This may make our stock an unsuitable investment for many investors.



***We will need to enter into agreements in order to implement our business strategy.***

Except for a certain license agreement described in Item 1 (“Business”), we do not have any material agreements or understandings in place with respect to the implementation of our business strategy. No assurances can be given that we will be able to enter into any necessary agreements with respect to the development of our business. Our inability to enter into any such agreements would have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

***We depend on our executive officers and on our ability to attract and retain additional qualified personnel; we do not currently have a Chief Financial Officer.***

Our performance is substantially dependent on the performance of Mark Weinreb, our Chief Executive Officer. We rely upon him for strategic business decisions and guidance. Mr. Weinreb is subject to an employment agreement with us that is scheduled to expire on December 31, 2019. We are also dependent on the performance of Adam D. Bergstein, our Senior Vice President, Planning and Business Development, and Francisco Silva, our Vice President of Research and Development, in establishing and developing our products. Messrs. Bergstein and Silva are also subject to employment agreements with us. We do not have any key-man insurance policies on the lives of any of our executive officers. We do not currently have a Chief Financial Officer. Pending the hiring of a Chief Financial Officer, we are utilizing financial consultants with regard to the preparation of our financial statements. We believe that our future success in developing marketable products and services and achieving a competitive position will depend in large part upon whether we can attract and retain additional qualified management and scientific personnel, including a Chief Financial Officer. Competition for such personnel is intense, and there can be no assurance that we will be able to attract and retain such personnel. The loss of the services of Mr. Weinreb, Mr. Bergstein and/or Mr. Silva or the inability to attract and retain additional personnel, including a Chief Financial Officer, and develop expertise as needed would have a substantial negative effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

***Continued turmoil in the economy could harm our business.***

Negative trends in the general economy, including, but not limited to, trends resulting from an actual or perceived recession, tightening credit markets, increased cost of commodities, actual or threatened military action by the United States and threats of terrorist attacks in the United States and abroad, could cause a reduction of investment in and available funding for companies in certain industries, including ours. Our ability to raise capital has been and may in the future be adversely affected by downturns in current credit conditions, financial markets and the global economy.

### **Risks Related to Our Cell Therapy Product Development Efforts**

***Our future success is significantly dependent on the timely and successful development and commercialization of BRTX-100, our lead product candidate for the treatment of chronic lumbar disc disease; if we encounter delays or difficulties in the development of this product candidate, as well as any other product candidates, our business prospects would be significantly harmed.***

We are dependent upon the successful development, approval and commercialization of our product candidates. Before we are able to seek regulatory approval of our product candidates, we must conduct and complete extensive clinical trials to demonstrate their safety and efficacy in humans. Our lead product candidate, *BRTX-100*, is in early stages of development and we only recently received FDA authorization to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial using *BRTX-100* to investigate the use of the candidate in treating chronic lower back pain due to degenerative disc disease related to protruding/bulging discs.

Clinical testing is expensive, difficult to design and implement, and can take many years to complete. Importantly, a failure of one or more of these or any other clinical trials can occur at any stage of testing. We may experience numerous unforeseen events during, or as a result of, clinical trials that could delay or prevent our ability to complete our clinical studies, receive regulatory approval or commercialize our cell therapy product candidates, including the following:

- suspensions, delays or changes in the design, initiation, enrollment, implementation or completion of required clinical trials; adverse changes in our financial position or significant and unexpected increases in the cost of our clinical development program; changes or uncertainties in, or additions to, the regulatory approval process that require us to alter our current development strategy; clinical trial results that are negative, inconclusive or less than desired as to safety and/or efficacy, which could result in the need for additional clinical studies or the termination of the product's development; delays in our ability to manufacture the product in quantities or in a form that is suitable for any required clinical trials;
- intellectual property constraints that prevent us from making, using, or commercializing any of our cell therapy product candidates;
- the supply or quality of our product candidates or other materials necessary to conduct clinical trials of these product candidates may be insufficient or inadequate; inability to generate sufficient pre-clinical, toxicology, or other in vivo or in vitro data to support the initiation of clinical studies;
- delays in reaching agreement on acceptable terms with prospective contract research organizations, or CROs, and clinical study sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and clinical study sites;
- delays in obtaining required Institutional Review Board, or IRB, approval at each clinical study site;
- imposition of a temporary or permanent clinical hold by regulatory agencies for a number of reasons, including after review of an IND application or amendment, or equivalent application or amendment; as a result of a new safety finding that presents unreasonable risk to clinical trial participants; a negative finding from an inspection of our clinical study operations or study sites; developments on trials conducted by competitors or approved products post-market for related technology that raises FDA concerns about risk to patients of the technology broadly; or if the FDA finds that the investigational protocol or plan is clearly deficient to meet its stated objectives;

- difficulty collaborating with patient groups and investigators;
- failure by our CROs, other third parties, or us to adhere to clinical study requirements;
- failure to perform in accordance with the FDA's current Good Clinical Practices, or cGCP, requirements, or applicable regulatory guidelines in other countries;
- delays in having patients qualify for or complete participation in a study or return for post-treatment follow-up;
- patients dropping out of a study;
- occurrence of adverse events associated with the product candidate that are viewed to outweigh its potential benefits;
- changes in the standard of care on which a clinical development plan was based, which may require new or additional trials;
- transfer of manufacturing processes from our academic collaborators to larger-scale facilities operated by either a contract manufacturing organization, or CMO, or by us, and delays or failure by our CMOs or us to make any necessary changes to such manufacturing process;
- delays in manufacturing, testing, releasing, validating, or importing/exporting sufficient stable quantities of our product candidates for use in clinical studies or the inability to do any of the foregoing; and
- the FDA may not accept clinical data from trials that are conducted at clinical sites in countries where the standard of care is potentially different from the United States.

Any inability to successfully complete pre-clinical and clinical development could result in additional costs to us or impair our ability to generate revenue. In addition, if we make manufacturing or formulation changes to our product candidates, we may be required, or we may elect, to conduct additional studies to bridge our modified product candidates to earlier versions. Clinical study delays could also shorten any periods during which our products have patent protection and may allow our competitors to bring products to market before we do, which could impair our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates and may harm our business and results of operations.

Even if we are able to successfully complete our clinical development program for our product candidates, and ultimately receive regulatory approval to market one or more of the products, we may, among other things:

- obtain approval for indications that are not as broad as the indications we sought;
- have the product removed from the market after obtaining marketing approval;
- encounter issues with respect to the manufacturing of commercial supplies;
- be subject to additional post-marketing testing requirements; and/or
- be subject to restrictions on how the product is distributed or used.

We anticipate that we will not be able to commercialize our *BRTX-100* product for at least five years.

***We may experience delays and other difficulties in enrolling a sufficient number of patients in our clinical trials which could delay or prevent the receipt of necessary regulatory approvals.***

We may not be able to initiate or complete as planned any clinical trials if we are unable to identify and enroll a sufficient number of eligible patients to participate in the clinical trials required by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. We also may be unable to engage a sufficient number of clinical trial sites to conduct our trials.

We may face challenges in enrolling patients to participate in our clinical trials due to the novelty of our cell-based therapies, the size of the patient populations and the eligibility criteria for enrollment in the trial. In addition, some patients may have concerns regarding cell therapy that may negatively affect their perception of therapies under development and their decision to enroll in the trials. Furthermore, patients suffering from diseases within target indications may enroll in competing clinical trials, which could negatively affect our ability to complete enrollment of our trials. Enrollment challenges in clinical trials often result in increased development costs for a product candidate, significant delays and potentially the abandonment of the clinical trial.

***We may have other delays in completing our clinical trials and we may not complete them at all.***

We have not commenced the clinical trials necessary to obtain FDA approval to market *BRTX-100* or any of our other products in development. While our management lacks significant experience in completing clinical trials and bringing a drug through commercialization, we have hired outside consultants with such experience. Clinical trials for *BRTX-100* and other products in development may be delayed or terminated as a result of many factors, including the following:

- patients failing to complete clinical trials due to dissatisfaction with the treatment, side effects or other reasons;
- failure by regulators to authorize us to commence a clinical trial;

- suspension or termination by regulators of clinical research for many reasons, including concerns about patient safety, the failure of study sites and/or investigators in our clinical research program to comply with Good Clinical Practices, or GCP, requirements, or our failure, or the failure of our contract manufacturers, to comply with current Good Manufacturing Practices, or cGMP, requirements;
- delays or failure to obtain clinical supply for our products necessary to conduct clinical trials from contract manufacturers;
- treatment candidates demonstrating a lack of efficacy during clinical trials;
- treatment candidates demonstrating significant safety signals
- inability to continue to fund clinical trials or to find a partner to fund the clinical trials;
- competition with ongoing clinical trials and scheduling conflicts with participating clinicians; and
- delays in completing data collection and analysis for clinical trials.

Any delay or failure to complete clinical trials and obtain FDA approval for our product candidates could have a material adverse effect on our cost to develop and commercialize, and our ability to generate revenue from, a particular product candidate.

***The development of our cell therapy product candidates is subject to uncertainty because autologous cell therapy is inherently variable.***

When manufacturing an autologous cell therapy, the number and the composition of the cell population varies from patient to patient. Such variability in the number and composition of these cells could adversely affect our ability to manufacture autologous cell therapies in a cost-effective or profitable manner and meet acceptable product release specifications for use in a clinical trial or, if approved, for commercial sale. As a consequence, the development and regulatory approval process for autologous cell therapy products could be delayed or may never be completed.

***Any disruption to our access to the media (including cell culture media) and reagents we are using in the clinical development of our cell therapy product candidates could adversely affect our ability to perform clinical trials and seek future regulatory submissions.***

Certain media (including cell culture media) and reagents, as well as devices, materials and systems, that we intend to use in our planned clinical trials, and that we may need or use in commercial production, are provided by unaffiliated third parties. Any lack of continued availability of these media, reagents, devices, materials and systems for any reason would have a material adverse effect on our ability to complete these studies and could adversely impact our ability to achieve commercial manufacture of our planned therapeutic products. Although other available sources for these media, reagents, devices, materials and systems may exist in the marketplace, we have not evaluated their cost, effectiveness, or intellectual property foundation and therefore cannot guarantee the suitability or availability of such other potential sources.

***Products that appear promising in research and development may be delayed or may fail to reach later stages of clinical development.***

The successful development of cellular based products is highly uncertain. Product candidates that appear promising in research and development may be delayed or fail to reach later stages of development. Decisions regarding the further development of product candidates must be made with limited and incomplete data, which makes it difficult to ensure or even accurately predict whether the allocation of limited resources and the expenditure of additional capital on specific product candidates will result in desired outcomes. Pre-clinical and clinical data can be interpreted in different ways, and negative or inconclusive results or adverse events during a clinical trial could delay, limit or prevent the development of a product candidate.

***Our clinical trials may fail to demonstrate adequately the safety and efficacy of our product candidates, which would prevent or delay regulatory approval and commercialization.***

The clinical trials of our product candidates are, and the manufacturing and marketing of our products will be, subject to extensive and rigorous review and regulation by numerous government authorities in the United States and in other countries where we intend to test and market our product candidates. Before obtaining regulatory approvals for the commercial sale of any of our product candidates, we must demonstrate through lengthy, complex and expensive preclinical testing and clinical trials that our product candidates are both safe and effective for use in each target indication. In particular, because our product candidates are subject to regulation as biological drug products, we will need to demonstrate that they are safe, pure, and potent for use in their target indications. Each product candidate must demonstrate an adequate risk versus benefit profile in its intended patient population and for its intended use. The risk/benefit profile required for product licensure will vary depending on these factors and may include decrease or elimination of pain, adequate duration of response, a delay in the progression of the disease, an improvement in function and/or decrease in disability.

In addition, even if such trials are successfully completed, we cannot guarantee that the FDA will interpret the results as we do, and more trials could be required before we submit our product candidates for approval. To the extent that the results of the trials are not satisfactory to the FDA for support of a marketing application, we may be required to expend significant resources, which may not be available to us, to conduct additional trials in support of potential approval of our product candidates.

***We presently lack manufacturing capabilities to produce our product candidates at commercial scale quantities and do not have an alternate manufacturing supply, which could negatively impact our ability to meet any future demand for the products.***

Currently, we expect our laboratory (or a contract laboratory) to provide the cell processing services necessary for clinical production of *BRTX-100* for our disc clinical trial. To date, we have not produced any products at our laboratory. We expect that we would need to significantly expand our manufacturing capabilities to meet potential commercial demand for *BRTX-100* and any other of our product candidates, if approved, as well as any of our other product candidates that might attain regulatory approval. Such expansion would require additional regulatory approvals. Even if we increase our manufacturing capabilities, it is possible that we may still lack sufficient capacity to meet demand. Ultimately, if we are unable to supply our products to meet commercial demand, whether because of processing constraints or other disruptions, delays or difficulties that we experience, sales of the products and their long-term commercial prospects could be significantly damaged.

We do not presently have a third-party manufacturer for *BRTX-100* or any of our other product candidates. If our facilities at which these product candidates would be manufactured or our equipment were significantly damaged or destroyed, or if there were other disruptions, delays or difficulties affecting manufacturing capacity, our planned and future clinical studies and commercial production for these product candidates would likely be significantly disrupted and delayed. It would be both time consuming and expensive to replace this capacity with third parties, particularly since any new facility would need to comply with the regulatory requirements.

Ultimately, if we are unable to supply our cell therapy product candidates to meet commercial demand (assuming commercial approval is obtained), whether because of processing constraints or other disruptions, delays or difficulties that we experience, our production costs could dramatically increase and sales of the product and its long-term commercial prospects could be significantly damaged.

***The commercial potential and profitability of our products are unknown and subject to significant risk and uncertainty.***

Even if we successfully develop and obtain regulatory approval for our cell therapy product candidates, the market may not understand or accept the products, which could adversely affect both the timing and level of future sales. Ultimately, the degree of market acceptance of our product candidates (or any of our future product candidates) will depend on a number of factors, including:

- the clinical effectiveness, safety and convenience of the product particularly in relation to alternative treatments;
- our ability to distinguish our products (which involve adult cells) from any ethical and political controversies associated with stem cell products derived from human embryonic or fetal tissue; and
- the cost of the product, the reimbursement policies of government and third-party payors and our ability to obtain sufficient third-party coverage or reimbursement.

Even if we are successful in achieving sales of our product candidates, it is not clear to what extent, if any, the products will be profitable. The costs of goods associated with production of cell therapy products are significant. In addition, some changes in manufacturing processes or procedures generally require FDA or foreign regulatory authority review and approval prior to implementation. We may need to conduct additional pre-clinical studies and clinical trials to support approval of any such changes. Furthermore, this review process could be costly and time-consuming and could delay or prevent the commercialization of product candidates.

***We may have difficulties in sourcing brown adipose (fat) tissue.***

Our research agreement with the University of Utah (which expired in June 2015) provided an opportunity for us to obtain brown adipose (fat) tissue that we use to identify and characterize brown adipose derived stem cells for use in our pre-clinical *ThermoStem Program*. There is no certainty that we will be able to continue to collect brown adipose samples through relationships that we may establish with other potential sources of brown adipose tissue. The loss of brown tissue procurement would have a material adverse effect upon our ability to advance the *ThermoStem Program*.

***We are required to complete a certain milestone or pay a certain royalty amount to maintain our exclusive license rights with regard to the disc/spine technology. The loss of such exclusive rights would have a material adverse effect upon us.***

Pursuant to our license agreement with Regenerative Sciences, LLC, we must complete a certain milestone or pay a certain royalty amount in order to maintain our exclusive rights with regard to the disc/spine technology. No assurances can be given that we will achieve such milestone or have the funds, if necessary, to pay such royalty amount. Any loss of such exclusive rights would have a material adverse effect upon our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***If safety problems are encountered by us or others developing new stem cell-based therapies, our stem cell initiatives could be materially and adversely affected.***

The use of stem cells for therapeutic indications is still in the very early stages of development. If an adverse event occurs during clinical trials related to one of our proposed products and/or services or those of others, the FDA and other regulatory authorities may halt clinical trials or require additional studies. The occurrence of any of these events would delay, and increase the cost of, our development efforts and may render the commercialization of our proposed products and/or services impractical or impossible.

***Ethical and other concerns surrounding the use of stem cell therapy may negatively impact the public perception of our stem cell products and/or services, thereby suppressing demand for our products and/or services.***

Although our contemplated stem cell business pertains to adult stem cells only, and does not involve the more controversial use of embryonic stem cells, the use of adult human stem cells for therapy could give rise to similar ethical, legal and social issues as those associated with embryonic stem cells, which could adversely affect its acceptance by consumers and medical practitioners. Additionally, it is possible that our business could be negatively impacted by any stigma associated with the use of embryonic stem cells if the public fails to appreciate the distinction between adult and embryonic stem cells. Delays in achieving public acceptance may materially and adversely affect the results of our operations and profitability.

***We are vulnerable to competition and technological change, and also to physicians' inertia.***

We will compete with many domestic and foreign companies in developing our technology and products, including biotechnology, medical device and pharmaceutical companies. Many current and potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technological, research and development, marketing, and personnel resources. There is no assurance that our competitors will not succeed in developing alternative products and/or services that are more effective, easier to use, or more economical than those which we may develop, or that would render our products and/or services obsolete and non-competitive. In general, we may not be able to prevent others from developing and marketing competitive products and/or services similar to ours or which perform similar functions or which are marketed before ours.



Competitors may have greater experience in developing products, therapies or devices, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory clearances or approvals, manufacturing and commercialization. It is possible that competitors may obtain patent protection, approval or clearance from the FDA or achieve commercialization earlier than we can, any of which could have a substantial negative effect on our business.

We will compete against cell-based therapies derived from alternate sources, such as bone marrow, adipose tissue, umbilical cord blood and potentially embryos. Doctors historically are slow to adopt new technologies like ours, whatever the merits, when older technologies continue to be supported by established providers. Overcoming such inertia often requires very significant marketing expenditures or definitive product performance and/or pricing superiority.

We expect that physicians' inertia and skepticism will also be a significant barrier as we attempt to gain market penetration with our future products and services. We may need to finance lengthy time-consuming clinical studies (so as to provide convincing evidence of the medical benefit) in order to overcome this inertia and skepticism.

***We may form or seek collaborations or strategic alliances or enter into additional licensing arrangements in the future, and we may not realize the benefits of such alliances or licensing arrangements.***

We may form or seek strategic alliances, create joint ventures or collaborations, or enter into additional licensing arrangements with third parties that we believe will complement or augment our development and commercialization efforts with respect to our product candidates and any future product candidates that we may develop. Any of these relationships may require us to incur non-recurring and other charges, increase our near and long-term expenditures, issue securities that dilute the shares of our existing stockholders, or disrupt our management and business. In addition, we face significant competition in seeking appropriate strategic partners and the negotiation process is time-consuming and complex. Moreover, we may not be successful in our efforts to establish a strategic partnership or other alternative arrangements for our product candidates because they may be deemed to be at too early of a stage of development for collaborative effort and third parties may not view our product candidates as having the requisite potential to demonstrate safety and efficacy.

Further, collaborations involving our product candidates, such as our collaborations with third-party research institutions, are subject to numerous risks, which may include the following:

- collaborators have significant discretion in determining the efforts and resources that they will apply to a collaboration;
- collaborators may not pursue development and commercialization of our product candidates or may elect not to continue or renew development or commercialization programs based on clinical trial results, changes in their strategic focus due to the acquisition of competitive products, availability of funding, or other external factors, such as a business combination that diverts resources or creates competing priorities;

- collaborators may delay clinical trials, provide insufficient funding for a clinical trial, stop a clinical trial, abandon a product candidate, repeat or conduct new clinical trials, or require a new formulation of a product candidate for clinical testing;
- collaborators could independently develop, or develop with third parties, products that compete directly or indirectly with our products or product candidates;
- a collaborator with marketing and distribution rights to one or more products may not commit sufficient resources to their marketing and distribution;
- collaborators may not properly maintain or defend our intellectual property rights or may use our intellectual property or proprietary information in a way that gives rise to actual or threatened litigation that could jeopardize or invalidate our intellectual property or proprietary information or expose us to potential liability;
- disputes may arise between us and a collaborator that cause the delay or termination of the research, development or commercialization of our product candidates, or that result in costly litigation or arbitration that diverts management attention and resources;
- collaborations may be terminated and, if terminated, may result in a need for additional capital to pursue further development or commercialization of the applicable product candidates; and
- collaborators may own or co-own intellectual property covering our products that results from our collaborating with them, and in such cases, we would not have the exclusive right to commercialize such intellectual property.

As a result, if we enter into collaboration agreements and strategic partnerships or license our products or businesses, we may not be able to realize the benefit of such transactions if we are unable to successfully integrate them with our existing operations and company culture, which could delay our timelines or otherwise adversely affect our business. We also cannot be certain that, following a strategic transaction or license, we will achieve the revenue or specific net income that justifies such transaction. Any delays in entering into new collaborations or strategic partnership agreements related to our product candidates could delay the development and commercialization of our product candidates in certain geographies for certain indications, which would harm our business prospects, financial condition, and results of operations.

***We have limited experience in the development and marketing of cell therapies and may be unsuccessful in our efforts to establish a profitable business.***

Over the past seven years, our business plan has been focused on capturing a piece of the burgeoning field of cell therapy. We have limited experience in the areas of cell therapy product development and marketing, and in the related regulatory issues and processes. Although we have recruited a team that has experience with designing and conducting clinical trials and hired contract research organizations, contract manufacturing organizations and FDA consultants, as a company, we have limited experience in conducting clinical trials and no experience in conducting clinical trials through to regulatory approval of any product candidate. In part because of this lack of experience, we cannot be certain that planned clinical trials will begin or be completed on time, if at all. We cannot assure that we will successfully achieve our clinical development goals or fulfill our plans to capture a piece of the cell therapy market.

***Our cell therapy business is based on novel technologies that are inherently expensive, risky and may not be understood by or accepted in the marketplace, which could adversely affect our future value.***

The clinical development, commercialization and marketing of cell and tissue-based therapies are at an early-stage, substantially research-oriented, and financially speculative. To date, very few companies have been successful in their efforts to develop and commercialize a cell therapy product. In general, cell-based or tissue-based products may be susceptible to various risks, including undesirable and unintended side effects, unintended immune system responses, inadequate therapeutic efficacy, or other characteristics that may prevent or limit their approval or commercial use. In addition, *BRTX-100* is a cell-based candidate that is produced by using a patient's own stem cells derived from bone marrow. Regulatory approval of novel product candidates such as *BRTX-100*, which is manufactured using novel manufacturing processes, can be more complex and expensive and take longer than other, more well-known or extensively studied pharmaceutical or biopharmaceutical products, due to the FDA's lack of experience with them. To our knowledge, the FDA has not yet approved a disc related stem cell therapy product. This lack of experience may lengthen the regulatory review process, require us to conduct additional studies or clinical trials, which would increase our development costs, lead to changes in regulatory positions and interpretations, delay or prevent approval and commercialization of these product candidates or lead to significant post-approval limitations or restrictions. Furthermore, the number of people who may use cell or tissue-based therapies is difficult to forecast with accuracy. Our future success is dependent on the establishment of a large global market for cell- and tissue-based therapies and our ability to capture a share of this market with our product candidates.

***Our cell therapy product candidates for which we intend to seek approval as biologic products may face competition sooner than anticipated.***

The enactment of the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, or BPCIA, created an abbreviated regulatory pathway for the approval of products demonstrated to be biosimilar, or "highly similar," to or "interchangeable" with an FDA-approved innovator (original) biologic product. The abbreviated regulatory pathway establishes legal authority for the FDA to review and approve biosimilar biologics, including the possible designation of a biosimilar as "interchangeable" based on its similarity to an existing reference product. Under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product cannot be approved by the FDA until 12 years after the original branded product is approved under a biologics license application, or BLA. Although the FDA has approved several biosimilar products, complex provisions of the law are still being implemented by the FDA and interpreted by the federal courts. As a result, the ultimate impact, implementation, and meaning of the BPCIA are still subject to some uncertainty and FDA actions and court decisions concerning the law could have a material adverse effect on the future commercial prospects for our biological products.

We believe that, if any of our product candidates are approved as a biological product under a BLA, it should qualify for the 12-year period of exclusivity. However, there is a risk that the FDA could approve biosimilar applicants for other reference products that no longer have such exclusivity, thus potentially creating the opportunity for greater competition sooner than anticipated. Moreover, the extent to which a biosimilar, once approved, will be substituted for any one of our reference products in a way that is similar to traditional generic substitution for non-biological products is not yet clear, and will depend on a number of marketplace and regulatory factors that are still developing.

***The FDA's regulation of regenerative medicine products remains unpredictable and we are not certain what impact this will have on the potential approval of our products.***

The FDA's regulation of therapies derived from stem cell products and technologies is evolving and may continue to evolve. In December 2016, the 21<sup>st</sup> Century Cures Act, or the Cures Act, was signed into law in the U.S. to advance access to medical innovations. Among other things, the Cures Act established a new FDA "Regenerative Medicine Advanced Therapy," or RMAT, designation. This designation offers a variety of benefits to product candidates, including enhanced FDA support during clinical development, priority review on application filing, accelerated approval based on potential surrogate endpoints, and the potential use of patient registry data and other forms of real world evidence for post-approval confirmatory studies. While the FDA issued draft guidance on such designation in November 2017, this guidance has not been finalized to date. There is no certainty that any of our product candidates will receive RMAT designation or that the receipt of such designation would provide an expedited pathway to FDA approval.

***We may be subject to significant product liability claims and litigation, including potential exposure from the use of our product candidates in human subjects, and our insurance may be inadequate to cover claims that may arise.***

Our business exposes us to potential product liability risks inherent in the testing, processing and marketing of cell therapy products. Such liability claims may be expensive to defend and result in large judgments against us. We face an inherent risk of product liability exposure related to the testing of our current and any future product candidates in human clinical trials and will face an even greater risk with respect to any commercial sales of our products should they be approved. No product candidate has been widely used over an extended period of time, and therefore safety data is limited. Cell therapy companies derive the raw materials for manufacturing of product candidates from human cell sources, and therefore the manufacturing process and handling requirements are extensive, which increases the risk of quality failures and subsequent product liability claims.

We will need to maintain insurance coverage adequate to cover our clinical trials and increase that coverage before commercializing product candidates, if ever. At any time during our clinical trials or after commercialization, if that occurs, we may not be able to obtain or maintain product liability insurance on acceptable terms with adequate coverage or at all, or if claims against us substantially exceed our coverage, then our financial position could be significantly impaired.

Whether or not we are ultimately successful in any product liability litigation that may arise, such litigation could consume substantial amounts of our financial and managerial resources, result in decreased demand for our products and injure our reputation.

We seek to maintain errors and omissions, directors and officers, workers' compensation and other insurance at levels we believe to be appropriate to our business activities. If, however, we were subject to a claim in excess of this coverage or to a claim not covered by our insurance and the claim succeeded, we would be required to pay the claim from our own limited resources, which could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition, results of operations and business. Additionally, liability or alleged liability could harm our business by diverting the attention and resources of our management and damaging our reputation.

***Our internal computer systems, or those that are expected to be used by our clinical investigators, clinical research organizations or other contractors or consultants, may fail or suffer security breaches, which could result in a material disruption of development programs for our product candidates.***

We rely on information technology systems to keep financial records, maintain laboratory and corporate records, communicate with staff and external parties and operate other critical functions. Any significant degradation or failure of these computer systems could cause us to inaccurately calculate or lose data. Despite the implementation of security measures, these internal computer systems and those used by our clinical investigators, clinical research organizations, and other contractors and consultants are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, natural disasters, terrorism, war, and telecommunication and electrical failures. The techniques that could be used by criminal elements or foreign governments to attack these computer systems are sophisticated, change frequently and may originate from less regulated and remote areas of the world. While we have not experienced any such system failure, theft of information, accident or security breach to date, if such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our clinical development activities. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from historical or future clinical trials could result in delays in regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase costs to recover or reproduce the data. To the extent that any disruption, theft of information, or security breach were to result in a loss of or damage to data or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability and the clinical development and the future development of our product candidates could be delayed.

***To operate and sell in international markets carries great risk.***

We intend to market our products and services both domestically and in foreign markets. A number of risks are inherent in international transactions. In order for us to market our products and services in non-U.S. jurisdictions, we need to obtain and maintain required regulatory approvals or clearances in these countries and must comply with the country specific regulations regarding safety, manufacturing processes and quality. These regulations, including the requirements for approvals or clearances to market, may differ from the FDA regulatory scheme. International operations and sales also may be limited or disrupted by political instability, price controls, trade restrictions and changes in tariffs. Additionally, fluctuations in currency exchange rates may adversely affect demand for our services and products by increasing the price of our products and services in the currency of the countries in which the products and services are offered.

There can be no assurance that we will obtain regulatory approvals or clearances in all of the countries where we intend to market our products and services, or that we will not incur significant costs in obtaining or maintaining foreign regulatory approvals or clearances, or that we will be able to successfully commercialize our products and services in various foreign markets. Delays in receipt of approvals or clearances to market our products and services in foreign countries, failure to receive such approvals or clearances or the future loss of previously received approvals or clearances could have a substantial negative effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

***Our inability to obtain reimbursement for our products and services from private and governmental insurers could negatively impact demand for our products and services.***

Successful sales of health care products and services generally depends, in part, upon the availability and amounts of reimbursement from third party healthcare payor organizations, including government agencies, private healthcare insurers and other healthcare payors, such as health maintenance organizations and self-insured employee plans. Uncertainty exists as to the availability of reimbursement for such new therapies as stem cell-based therapies. There can be no assurance that such reimbursement will be available in the future at all or without substantial delay or, if such reimbursement is provided, that the approved reimbursement amounts will be sufficient to support demand for our products and services at a level that will be profitable.

#### **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

***We may not be able to protect our proprietary rights.***

Our commercial success will depend in large part upon our ability to protect our proprietary rights. There is no assurance, for example, that any additional patents will be issued to us or, if issued, that such patents will not become the subject of a re-examination, will provide us with competitive advantages, will not be challenged by any third parties, or that the patents of others will not prevent the commercialization of products and services incorporating our technology. Furthermore, there can be no guarantee that others will not independently develop similar products and services, duplicate any of our products and services, or design around any patents we obtain.

Our commercial success will also depend upon our ability to avoid infringing patents issued to others. If we were judicially determined to be infringing on any third-party patent, we could be required to pay damages, alter our products, services or processes, obtain licenses, or cease certain activities. If we are required in the future to obtain any licenses from third parties for some of our products and/or services, there can be no guarantee that we would be able to do so on commercially favorable terms, if at all. United States and foreign patent applications are not immediately made public, so we might be surprised by the grant to someone else of a patent on a technology we are actively using. Although we conducted a freedom to operate, or FTO, search on the licensed technology associated with our *Disc/Spine Program*, modifications made, and/or further developments that may be made, to that technology may not be covered by the initial FTO. No FTO has been undertaken with respect to our *ThermoStem* brown fat initiative.

Litigation, which would result in substantial costs to us and the diversion of effort on our part, may be necessary to enforce or confirm the ownership of any patents issued or licensed to us, or to determine the scope and validity of third-party proprietary rights. If our competitors claim technology also claimed by us and prepare and file patent applications in the United States, we may have to participate in interference proceedings declared by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or the Patent Office, or a foreign patent office to determine priority of invention, which could result in substantial costs and diversion of effort, even if the eventual outcome is favorable to us. Any such litigation or interference proceeding, regardless of outcome, could be expensive and time-consuming.

Successful challenges to our patents through oppositions, re-examination proceedings or interference proceedings could result in a loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. If we are unsuccessful in actions we bring against the patents of other parties, and it is determined that we infringe upon the patents of third parties, we may be subject to litigation, or otherwise prevented from commercializing potential products and/or services in the relevant jurisdiction, or may be required to obtain licenses to those patents or develop or obtain alternative technologies, any of which could harm our business. Furthermore, if such challenges to our patent rights are not resolved in our favor, we could be delayed or prevented from entering into new collaborations or from commercializing certain products and/or services, which could adversely affect our business and results of operations.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential or sensitive information could be compromised by disclosure in the event of litigation. In addition, during the course of litigation there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a substantial adverse effect on the price of our common stock.

In addition to patents, we intend to also rely on unpatented trade secrets and proprietary technological expertise. Some of our intended future cell-related therapeutic products and/or services may fit into this category. We intend to rely, in part, on confidentiality agreements with our partners, employees, advisors, vendors, and consultants to protect our trade secrets and proprietary technological expertise. There can be no guarantee that these agreements will not be breached, or that we will have adequate remedies for any breach, or that our unpatented trade secrets and proprietary technological expertise will not otherwise become known or be independently discovered by competitors.

Failure to obtain or maintain patent protection, failure to protect trade secrets, third-party claims against our patents, trade secrets, or proprietary rights or our involvement in disputes over our patents, trade secrets, or proprietary rights, including involvement in litigation, could divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business and have a substantial negative effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

***We may not be able to protect our intellectual property in countries outside of the United States.***

Intellectual property law outside the United States is uncertain and, in many countries, is currently undergoing review and revisions. The laws of some countries do not protect our patent and other intellectual property rights to the same extent as United States laws. Third parties may attempt to oppose the issuance of patents to us in foreign countries by initiating opposition proceedings. Opposition proceedings against any of our patent filings in a foreign country could have an adverse effect on our corresponding patents that are issued or pending in the United States. It may be necessary or useful for us to participate in proceedings to determine the validity of our patents or our competitors' patents that have been issued in countries other than the United States. This could result in substantial costs, divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, and could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

***Changes to United States patent law may have a material adverse effect on our intellectual property rights.***

The Leahy-Smith America Invents Act, or AIA, which was signed into law in 2011, significantly changes United States patent law. It may take some time to establish what the law means, since it is just being interpreted by the lower courts, Federal Circuit Courts of Appeal, and the Supreme Court. The effects of these decisions are still not known. The first major change is that AIA switches the United States patent system from a "first to invent" system to a "first to file" system. Now that the first to file system is in effect, there is a risk that another company may independently develop identical or similar patents at approximately the same time, and be awarded the patents instead of us. Further, for the second major change, AIA abolished interference proceedings, and establishes derivation proceedings to replace interference proceedings in all cases in which the time period for instituting an interference proceeding has not lapsed where an inventor named in an earlier application derived the claimed invention from a named inventor. Now that the derivation proceedings are in effect, there is a risk that the inventorship of any pending patent application can be challenged for reasons of derivation. The third major change is that AIA established post-grant opposition proceedings that will apply only to patent applications filed after "first to file" became effective. Post-grant opposition will enable a person who is not the patent owner to initiate proceedings in the Patent Office within nine months after the grant of a patent that can result in cancellation of a patent as invalid. In addition to AIA, recent court decisions have created uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain and maintain patents. Therefore there is a risk that any of our patents once granted may be subject to post-grant opposition, which will increase uncertainty on the validity of any newly granted patent or may ultimately result in cancellation of the patent.

In addition, the Supreme Court has recently taken more limiting positions as to what constitutes patentable subject matter. As a result, many patents covering what were previously patentable inventions are now determined to cover inventions which are deemed non-statutory subject matter and are now invalid. As a result of this and subsequent opinions by the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the Patent Office is now applying more stringent limitations to claims in patent applications and is refusing to grant patents in areas of technology where patents were previously deemed available. Therefore there is a risk that we will be unable to acquire patents to cover our products and if such patents are granted they may subsequently be found to be invalid.



***In certain countries, patent holders may be required to grant compulsory licenses, which would likely have a significant and detrimental effect on any future revenues in such country.***

Many countries, including some countries in Europe, have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In addition, most countries limit the enforceability of patents against government agencies or government contractors. In these countries, the patent owner may be limited to monetary relief and may be unable to enjoin infringement, which could materially diminish the value of the patent. Compulsory licensing of life-saving products is also becoming increasingly common in developing countries, either through direct legislation or international initiatives. Such compulsory licenses could be extended to our product candidates, which may limit our potential revenue opportunities, including with respect to any future revenues that may result from our product candidates.

### **Risks Related to Government Regulation**

***We operate in a highly-regulated environment and may be unable to comply with applicable federal, state, local, and international requirements. Failure to comply with applicable government regulation may result in a loss of licensure, registration, and approval or other government enforcement actions.***

We intend to develop stem cell based therapeutic products and related device accessories. These products and operations are subject to regulation in the United States by the FDA, the FTC the CMS, state authorities and comparable authorities in foreign jurisdictions. Government regulation is a significant factor affecting the research, development, formulation, manufacture, and marketing of our products. If we fail to comply with applicable regulations, we may be subject to, among other things, fines, suspension or withdrawal of regulatory approvals, product recalls, operating restrictions and criminal prosecution.

The FDA requires facilities that are engaged in the recovery, processing, storage, labeling, packaging, or distribution of human cells, tissues, cellular and tissue-based products, or HCT/Ps, or in the screening or testing of donors of HCT/Ps to register and list the HCT/Ps that it manufactures, comply with current Good Tissue Practices, or cGTPs, and other procedures to prevent the introduction, transmission, and spread of communicable diseases. Our New York-based laboratory and any treatment centers we may open in the United States may be required to comply with the HCT/P regulations. In addition, any third party retained by us that engages in the manufacture of an HCT/P on our behalf must also comply with the HCT/P regulations. If we or our third-party contractors fail to register, update registration information, or comply with any HCT/P regulation, we will be out of compliance with FDA regulations, which could adversely affect our business. Furthermore, adverse events in the field of stem cell therapy may result in greater governmental regulation, which could create increased expenses, potential delays, or otherwise affect our business.

We believe that some of our products and services may be regulated solely as HCT/Ps; however, it is possible that some or all of our products may be regulated as prescription drugs, medical devices, and/or biological products and therefore will likely require FDA regulatory approval or clearance prior to being marketed in the United States. The FDA approval process can be lengthy, expensive, and uncertain and there is no guarantee of ultimate approval or clearance. Even if our products are approved, FDA regulation of manufacturing activities can affect our ability to market a drug, biologic or medical device. These products must comply with the applicable current Good Manufacturing Practices (for drug products), Quality System Regulations (for medical devices), or General Biological Product Standards (for biological products) as set forth in Title 21 of the Code of Federal Regulations. These regulations govern the manufacture, processing, packaging, and holding of the products. The FDA conducts inspections to enforce compliance with these regulations. We and any third-party contractor that manufactures these products on our behalf must comply with the applicable regulations. If we or any third party retained by us that engages in the manufacture of a drug, medical device, or biological product fails to comply with the applicable regulations, our business could be adversely affected. Discovery after FDA approval of previously unknown problems with a product, manufacturer or manufacturing process, or a failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in actions such as:

- a delay in or failure to receive FDA approval;
- warning letters or untitled letters or other actions requiring changes in product manufacturing processes or restrictions on product marketing or distribution;
- product recalls or seizures or the temporary or permanent withdrawal of a product from the market; and/or
- fines, restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenue, the imposition of civil penalties or criminal prosecution.

In addition, the FDA regulates and prescribes good laboratory practices, or GLPs, for conducting nonclinical laboratory studies that support applications for research or marketing permits for products regulated by the FDA. GLPs provide requirements for organization, personnel, facilities, equipment, testing, facilities operation, test and control articles, protocol for nonclinical laboratory study, records, reports, and disqualification by the FDA to ensure the quality and integrity of the safety data filed in research and marketing permits. Failure to comply with the GLPs could adversely affect our business.

Further, the FDA regulates the advertising and promotion in the United States of prescription drugs, medical devices, and biological products. The FDA requires such advertising and promotion to be truthful and not misleading. The omission of safety risks, overstatement of effectiveness information, improper product comparisons, and/or marketing of unapproved uses can result in enforcement actions by the FDA, such as the issuance of warning and untitled letters and the imposition of civil penalties or criminal prosecution. To the extent our products are regulated by the FDA as drugs, medical devices and/or biological products, violations of these requirements could have an adverse effect on our business.

The FTC regulates advertising in the United States of medical treatments, procedures, and regimens that take place inside and outside of the United States. FTC regulations are designed to prevent unfair and deceptive practices and false advertising. The FTC requires advertisers and promoters to have a reasonable basis to substantiate and support claims. Failure to sufficiently substantiate and support claims can lead to enforcement action by the FTC, such as a disgorgement order of any profits made from the promoted business or an injunction from further violative promotion. Such enforcement actions could have an adverse effect on our business.

State and local governments impose additional licensing and other requirements for clinical laboratories and facilities that collect, process, and administer stem cells. Our laboratory and any future treatment facilities that we may operate in the United States must comply with these additional licensing and other requirements. The licensing regulations require personnel with specific education, experience, training, and other credentials. There can be no assurance that these individuals can be retained or will remain retained or that the cost of retaining such individuals will not materially and adversely affect our ability to operate our business profitably. There can be no assurance that we can obtain the necessary licensure required to conduct business in any state or that the cost of compliance will not adversely affect our ability to operate our business profitably.

The CMS has authority to implement the Clinical Laboratories Improvement Amendments, or CLIA, program. Our laboratory operations in the United States will need to comply with the CLIA program standards. CLIA is designed to establish quality laboratory testing by ensuring the accuracy, reliability, and timeliness of patient test results. Laboratories that handle stem cells and other biologic matter are included under the CLIA program. Under the CLIA program, laboratories must be certified by the government, satisfy governmental quality and personnel standards, undergo proficiency testing, be subject to inspections, and pay fees. The failure to comply with CLIA standards could result in suspension, revocation, or limitation of a laboratory's CLIA certificate. In addition, fines or criminal penalties could also be levied. To the extent that our business activities require CLIA certification, we intend to obtain and maintain such certification. There is no guarantee that we will be able to gain CLIA certification. Failure to gain CLIA certification or comply with the CLIA requirements will adversely affect our business.

The Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, published the *Standards for Privacy of Individually Identifiable Health Information*, or the Privacy Rule, and the *Security Standards for the Protection of Electronic Protected Health Information*, or the Security Rule, pursuant to the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA. The Privacy Rule specifies the required, permitted and prohibited uses and disclosures of an individual's protected health information by health plans, health care clearinghouses, and any health care provider that transmits health information in electronic format (referred to as covered entities). The Security Rule establishes a national security standard for safeguarding protected health information that is held or transferred in electronic form (referred to as electronic protected health information). The Security Rule addresses the technical and non-technical safeguards that covered entities must implement to secure individuals' electronic protected health information.

In addition to covered entities, the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, enacted as part of the American Recovery Act of 2009, or the HITECH Act, made certain provisions of the Security Rule, as well as the additional requirements the HITECH Act imposed that relate to security and privacy and that are imposed on covered entities, directly applicable as a matter of law to individuals and entities that perform permitted functions on behalf of covered entities when those functions involve the use or disclosure of protected health information. These individuals and entities are referred to as business associates. Covered entities are required to enter into a contract with business associates, called a business associate agreement, that also imposes many of the Privacy Rule requirements on business associates as a matter of contract.

Regulations implementing the majority of the requirements created by the HITECH Act were issued in January 2013 (we refer to these regulations as the Final Rule). Among other things, the Final Rule broadened the definition of business associate to include subcontractors. As a result, a subcontractor who performs tasks involving the use or disclosure of protected health information on behalf of a business associate must likewise comply with the same obligations as the business associate.

The HITECH Act also established notification requirements in the event that a breach of the protected health information occurs at a covered entity or business associate. These notification obligations mandate that each affected individual whose protected health information was impermissibly accessed receive written notification mailed to his residence of record and that the Secretary of HHS and potentially the media also be notified. HHS, through its Office for Civil Rights, investigates breach reports and determines whether administrative or technical modifications are required and whether civil or criminal sanctions should be imposed. Companies failing to comply with HIPAA and the implementing regulations may also be subject to civil money penalties or in the case of knowing violations, potential criminal penalties, including monetary fines, imprisonment, or both. In some cases, the State Attorneys General may seek enforcement and appropriate sanctions in federal court.

To the extent that our business requires compliance with HIPAA, we intend to fully comply with all requirements as well as to other additional federal or state privacy laws and regulations that may apply to us. As HIPAA is amended and changed, we will incur additional compliance burdens. We may be required to spend substantial time and money to ensure compliance with ever-changing federal and state standards as electronic and other means of transmitting protected health information evolve.

In addition to the above-described regulation by United States federal and state government, the following are other federal and state laws and regulations that could directly or indirectly affect our ability to operate the business:

- state and local licensure, registration, and regulation of the development of pharmaceuticals and biologics;
- state and local licensure of medical professionals;
- state statutes and regulations related to the corporate practice of medicine;
- laws and regulations administered by U.S. Customs and Border Protection related to the importation of biological material into the United States;
- other laws and regulations administered by the FDA;
- other laws and regulations administered by HHS;
- state and local laws and regulations governing human subject research and clinical trials;
- the federal physician self-referral prohibition, also known as Stark Law, and any state equivalents to Stark Law;
- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and any state equivalent statutes and regulations;
- federal and state coverage and reimbursement laws and regulations;

- state and local laws and regulations for the disposal and handling of medical waste and biohazardous material;
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration, or OSHA, regulations and requirements;
- the Intermediate Sanctions rules of the IRS providing for potential financial sanctions with respect to “excess benefit transactions” with tax-exempt organizations;
- the Physician Payments Sunshine Act (in the event that our products are classified as drugs, biologics, devices or medical supplies and are reimbursed by Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program); and
- state and other federal laws governing the privacy of health information.

Any violation of these laws could result in a material adverse effect on our business.

In the event we determine to operate in foreign jurisdictions, including conducting clinical trials, we will need to comply with the United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, or FCPA. The FCPA prohibits a corporation, including its subsidiaries, third-party contractors, distributors, consultants and employees, from corruptly making or offering to make payments to foreign officials for the purpose of obtaining or enhancing business. Under the law, “foreign officials” include employees of health systems operated by government entities. The FCPA also establishes specific record-keeping and internal accounting controls. Violations of the FCPA can result in the imposition of civil penalties or criminal prosecution. Failure to comply with the FCPA will adversely affect our business.

In addition to the FCPA, we will also need to comply with the foreign government laws and regulations of each individual country in which any therapy centers that we may establish are located and products are to be distributed and sold. These regulations vary in complexity and can be as stringent, and on occasion even more stringent, than FDA regulations in the United States. Due to the fact that there are new and emerging cell therapy and cell banking regulations that have recently been drafted and/or implemented in various countries around the world, the application and subsequent implementation of these new and emerging regulations have little to no precedence. Therefore, the level of complexity and stringency is not always precisely understood today for each country, creating greater uncertainty for the international regulatory process. Furthermore, government regulations can change with little to no notice and may result in up-regulation of our products, thereby creating a greater regulatory burden for our cell processing technology products. We have not yet thoroughly explored the applicable laws and regulations that we will need to comply with in foreign jurisdictions. It is possible that we may not be permitted to expand our business into one or more foreign jurisdictions.

We intend to conduct our business in full compliance with all applicable federal, state and local, and foreign laws and regulations. However, the laws and regulations affecting our business are complex, often are not contemplated by existing legal régimes, and are subject to change without notice. As a result, the laws and regulations affecting our business are uncertain and have not been the subject of judicial or regulatory interpretation. Furthermore, stem cells and cell therapy are topics of interest in the government and public arenas. There can be no guarantee that laws and regulations will not be implemented, amended and/or reinterpreted in a way that will negatively affect our business. Likewise, there can be no assurance that we will be able, or will have the resources, to maintain compliance with all such healthcare laws and regulations. Failure to comply with such healthcare laws and regulations, as well as the costs associated with such compliance or with enforcement of such healthcare laws and regulations, may have a material adverse effect on our operations or may require restructuring of our operations or impair our ability to operate profitably.

***The failure to receive regulatory approvals for our cell therapy product candidates would likely have a material and adverse effect on our business and prospects.***

To date, we have not received regulatory approval to market any of our product candidates in any jurisdiction. If we seek approval of any of our cell therapy product candidates, we will be required to submit to the FDA and potentially other regulatory authorities extensive pre-clinical and clinical data supporting its safety and efficacy, as well as information about the manufacturing process and to undergo inspection of our manufacturing facility or other contract manufacturing facilities, among other things. The process of obtaining FDA and other regulatory approvals is expensive, generally takes many years and is subject to numerous risks and uncertainties, particularly with complex and/or novel product candidates such as our cell-based product candidates. Changes in regulatory approval requirements or policies may cause delays in the approval or rejection of an application or may make it easier for our competitors to gain regulatory approval to enter the marketplace. Ultimately, the FDA and other regulatory agencies have substantial discretion in the approval process and may refuse to accept any application or may decide that our product candidate data are insufficient for approval without the submission of additional preclinical, clinical or other studies. In addition, varying agency interpretations of the data obtained from preclinical and clinical testing could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval of a product candidate. Any difficulties or failures that we encounter in securing regulatory approval for our product candidates would likely have a substantial adverse impact on our ability to generate product sales, and could make any search for a collaborative partner more difficult. Similarly, any regulatory approval we ultimately obtain may be limited or subject to restrictions or post-approval commitments that render the approved product not commercially viable.

***If we are unable to conduct clinical studies in accordance with regulations and accepted standards, we may be delayed in receiving, or may never receive, regulatory approvals of our product candidates from the FDA and other regulatory authorities.***

To obtain marketing approvals for our product candidates in the United States and abroad, we must, among other requirements, complete adequate and well-controlled clinical trials sufficient to demonstrate to the FDA and other regulatory bodies that the product candidate is safe and effective for each indication for which approval is sought. If the FDA finds that patients enrolled in the trial are or would be exposed to an unreasonable and significant risk of illness or injury, due to, among other things, occurrence of a serious adverse event in an ongoing clinical trial, the FDA can place one or more of our clinical trials on hold. If safety concerns develop, we may, or the FDA or an institutional review board may require us to, stop the affected trials before completion.

The completion of our clinical trials also may be delayed or terminated for a number of other reasons, including if:

- third-party clinical investigators do not perform the clinical trials on the anticipated schedule or consistent with the clinical trial protocol, good clinical practices required by the FDA and other regulatory requirements, or other third parties do not perform data collection and analysis in a timely or accurate manner;
- inspections of clinical trial sites by the FDA or other regulatory authorities reveal violations that require us to undertake corrective action, suspend or terminate one or more sites, or prohibit use of some or all of the data in support of marketing applications; or
- the FDA or one or more institutional review boards suspends or terminates the trial at an investigational site, or precludes enrollment of additional subjects.

Our development costs will increase if there are material delays in our clinical trials, or if we are required to modify, suspend, terminate or repeat a clinical trial. If we are unable to conduct our clinical trials properly, we may never receive regulatory approval to market our product candidates.

***Health care companies have been the subjects of federal and state investigations, and we could become subject to investigations in the future.***

Both federal and state government agencies have heightened civil and criminal enforcement efforts. There are numerous ongoing investigations of health care companies, as well as their executives and managers. In addition, amendments to the federal False Claims Act, or FCA, including under healthcare reform legislation, have made it easier for private parties to bring “*qui tam*” (or whistleblower) lawsuits against companies under which the whistleblower may be entitled to receive a percentage of any money paid to the government. The FCA provides, in part, that an action can be brought against any person or entity that has knowingly presented, or caused to be presented, a false or fraudulent request for payment from the federal government, or who has made a false statement or used a false record to get a claim approved. The government has taken the position that claims presented in violation of the federal anti-kickback law, Stark Law or other healthcare-related laws, including laws enforced by the FDA, may be considered a violation of the FCA. Penalties include substantial fines for each false claim, plus three times the amount of damages that the federal government sustained because of the act of that person or entity and/or exclusion from the Medicare program. In addition, a majority of states have adopted similar state whistleblower and false claims provisions.

We are not aware of any government investigations involving any of our facilities or management. While we believe that we are in compliance with applicable governmental healthcare laws and regulations, any future investigations of our business or executives could cause us to incur substantial costs, and result in significant liabilities or penalties, as well as damage to our reputation.

***It is uncertain to what extent the government, private health insurers and third-party payors will approve coverage or provide reimbursement for the therapies and products to which our services relate. Availability for such reimbursement may be further limited by reductions in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare program funding in the United States.***

To the extent that health care providers cannot obtain coverage or reimbursement for our products and therapies, they may elect not to provide such products and therapies to their patients and, thus, may not need our services. Further, as cost containment pressures are increasing in the health care industry, government and private payors may adopt strategies designed to limit the amount of reimbursement paid to health care providers.

Similarly, the trend toward managed health care and bundled pricing for health care services in the United States, could significantly influence the purchase of healthcare products and services, resulting in lower prices and reduced demand for our therapeutic products under development.

We may directly or indirectly receive revenues from federal health care programs, such as Medicare. Federal health care programs are subject to changes in coverage and reimbursement rules and procedures, including retroactive rate adjustments. These contingencies could materially decrease the range of services covered by such programs or the reimbursement rates paid directly or indirectly for our products and services. To the extent that any health care reform favors the reimbursement of other therapies over our therapeutic products under development, such reform could affect our ability to sell our services, which may have a material adverse effect on our revenues.

The limitation on reimbursement available from private and government payors may reduce the demand for, or the price of, our products and services, which could have a material adverse effect on our revenues. Additional legislation or regulation relating to the health care industry or third-party coverage and reimbursement may be enacted in the future which could adversely affect the revenues generated from the sale of our products and services.

Furthermore, there has been a trend in recent years towards reductions in overall funding for Medicare, Medicaid and other federal health care programs. There has also been an increase in the number of people who are not eligible for or enrolled in Medicare, Medicaid or other governmental programs. The reduced funding of governmental programs could have a negative impact on the demand for our services to the extent it relates to products and services which are reimbursed by government and private payors.

***Unintended consequences of healthcare reform in the United States may adversely affect our business.***

The healthcare industry is undergoing fundamental changes resulting from political, economic and regulatory influences. In the United States, the Affordable Care Act, or ACA, was signed into law in 2010 under the Obama administration. By implementing comprehensive reforms, the law seeks to, among other things, increase access to healthcare for the uninsured and control the escalation of healthcare expenditures within the economy. While we do not believe this law will have a direct impact on our business, the law requires the adoption of various implementing regulations, which may have unintended consequences or indirectly impact our business. Under the Trump administration, Congress has passed certain legislation to alter the ACA. In addition, Congress and select states have proposed legislation to alter and/or repeal the ACA and/or transform certain aspects of existing federal and state health programs. It is difficult to predict how enforcement initiatives under the ACA and/or additional legislation or regulation enacted in the future may impact our business. If the ACA and/or additional legislation or regulation enacted in the future cause such unintended consequences or indirect impact, they could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.



***Competitor companies or hospitals in the European Union, or EU, may be able to take advantage of EU rules permitting sales of unlicensed medicines for individual patients to sell competing products without a marketing authorization.***

The EU medicines rules allow individual member states to permit the supply of a medicinal product without a marketing authorization to fulfill special needs, where the product is supplied in response to a bona fide unsolicited order, formulated in accordance with the specifications of a healthcare professional and for use by an individual patient under his direct personal responsibility. This may, in certain countries, also apply to products manufactured in a country outside the EU and imported to treat specific patients or small groups of patients. In addition, advanced therapy medicinal products do not need a marketing authorization if they are prepared on a non-routine basis and are used within the same EU member state in a hospital in accordance with a medical prescription for an individual patient.

These exemptions could allow our competitors to make sales in the EU without having obtained a marketing authorization and without undergoing the expense of clinical trials, especially if those competitors have cell processing facilities in the relevant EU member state. Similarly, certain hospitals may be able to compete with us on the basis of these rules.

#### **Risks Related to Our Common Stock**

***We pay no dividends.***

We have never paid cash dividends in the past, and currently do not intend to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.

***There is at present only a limited market for our common stock and there is no assurance that an active trading market for our common stock will develop.***

Although our common stock is quoted on the OTCQB market from time to time, the market for our common stock is extremely limited. Trading prices and volumes on the OTCQB market are thin and erratic. We cannot predict at what price our shares will trade and there can be no assurance that an active market for our shares will develop or, if developed, will be sustained. The volume traded at any one time can be limited, and as a result, there may not be a liquid trading market for our shares. In addition, although there have been market makers in our shares, we cannot assure that these market makers will continue to make a market in our shares or that other factors outside of our control will not cause them to stop market making in our shares. Making a market in shares involves maintaining bid and ask quotations and being able to effect transactions in reasonable quantities at those quoted prices, subject to various securities laws and other regulatory requirements. Furthermore, the development and maintenance of a public trading market depends upon the existence of willing buyers and sellers, the presence of which is not within our control or that of any market maker. Market makers are not required to maintain a continuous two-sided market, are required to honor firm quotations for only a limited number of shares, and are free to withdraw firm quotations at any time. Even with a market maker, factors such as our past losses from operations and the small size of our company mean that there can be no assurance of an active and liquid market for our shares developing in the foreseeable future. Even if a market develops, we cannot assure that a market will continue, or that stockholders will be able to resell their shares at any price.

***Our common stock is classified as a “penny stock”; the restrictions of the penny stock regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, may result in less liquidity for our common stock.***

The SEC has adopted regulations which define a “penny stock” to be any equity security that has a market price (as therein defined) of less than \$5.00 per share or an exercise price of less than \$5.00 per share, subject to certain exceptions. Based upon the last reported sale price of our common stock on the OTCQB market on March 29, 2018, as of such date, our common stock was a “penny stock”. For any transactions involving a penny stock, unless exempt, the rules require the delivery, prior to any transaction involving a penny stock by a retail customer, of a disclosure schedule prepared by the SEC relating to the penny stock market. Disclosure is also required to be made about commissions payable to both the broker/dealer and the registered representative and current quotations for the securities. Finally, monthly statements are required to be sent disclosing recent price information for the penny stock held in the account and information on the limited market in penny stocks. If the market price for shares of our common stock remains below \$5.00, and we do not satisfy any of the exceptions to the SEC’s definition of penny stock, our common stock will continue to be classified as a penny stock. If such classification should remain in place, as a result of the penny stock restrictions, brokers or potential investors may be reluctant to trade in our securities, which may result in less liquidity for our common stock.

***Because state securities laws may limit secondary trading, stockholders may be restricted as to the states in which they can sell their shares.***

Because state securities laws may limit secondary trading, stockholders may be restricted as to the states in which they can sell their shares. Stockholders may not be able to resell them in any state unless and until the shares are qualified for secondary trading under the applicable securities laws of such state or there is confirmation that an exemption, such as listing in certain recognized securities manuals, is available for secondary trading in such state. There can be no assurance that we will be successful in registering or qualifying our shares for secondary trading, or identifying an available exemption for secondary trading in such shares in every state. If we fail to register or qualify, or to obtain or verify an exemption for the secondary trading of, our shares in any particular state, the shares could not be offered or sold to, or purchased by, a resident of that state. In the event that a significant number of states refuse to permit secondary trading in our shares, the market for the shares will be limited, which could drive down the market price of the shares and reduce the liquidity of the shares and a stockholder’s ability to resell the shares at all or at current market prices.

***Stockholders who hold unregistered shares of our common stock are subject to resale restrictions pursuant to Rule 144 due to our former status as a “shell company”.***

We previously were a “shell company” pursuant to Rule 144, promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or Rule 144, and, as such, sales of our securities pursuant to Rule 144 cannot be made unless, among other things, we continue to remain subject to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or the Exchange Act, and we file all of our required periodic reports with the SEC under the Exchange Act. Because our unregistered securities cannot be sold pursuant to Rule 144 unless we continue to meet such requirements, any unregistered securities we sell in the future or issue to consultants or employees, in consideration for services rendered or for any other purpose, will have no liquidity unless we continue to comply with such requirements. As a result, it may be more difficult for us to obtain financing to fund our operations and pay our consultants and employees with our securities instead of cash.

***We have incurred, and will continue to incur, increased costs as a result of being an SEC reporting company.***

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as well as a variety of related rules implemented by the SEC, have required changes in corporate governance practices and generally increased the disclosure requirements of public companies. As a reporting company, we incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses in connection with our public disclosure and other obligations. Based upon SEC regulations currently in effect, we are required to establish, evaluate and report on our internal control over financial reporting. We believe that compliance with the myriad of rules and regulations applicable to reporting companies and related compliance issues will require a significant amount of time and attention from our management.

***Our stock price may fluctuate significantly and be highly volatile and this may make it difficult for a stockholder to resell shares of our common stock at the volume, prices and times the stockholder finds attractive.***

The market price of our common stock may be subject to significant fluctuations and be highly volatile, which may make it difficult for a stockholder to resell shares of our common stock at the volume, prices and times the stockholder finds attractive. There are many factors that will impact our stock price and trading volume, including, but not limited to, the factors listed above under “Risks Related to Our Business Generally”, “Risks Related to Our Cell Therapy Product Development Efforts”, “Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property”, “Risks Related to Government Regulation”, and “Risks Related to Our Common Stock.”

Stock markets, in general, experience significant price and volume volatility, and the market price of our common stock may continue to be subject to such market fluctuations that may be unrelated to our operating performance and prospects. Increased market volatility and fluctuations could result in a substantial decline in the market price of our common stock.

***There may be future issuances or resales of our common stock which may materially and adversely dilute stockholders’ ownership interest and affect the market price of our common stock.***

We are not restricted from issuing additional shares of our common stock in the future, including securities convertible into, or exchangeable or exercisable for, shares of our common stock. Our issuance of additional shares of common stock in the future will dilute the ownership interests of our then existing stockholders.

We have effective registration statements on Form S-8 under the Securities Act registering an aggregate of 4,250,000 shares of our common stock issuable under our 2010 Equity Participation Plan, or the Plan. As of March 29, 2018, options to purchase 3,622,202 shares of our common stock were outstanding under the Plan. In addition, as of such date, 45,000 shares of common stock were issued as restricted stock pursuant to the Plan and 582,798 shares were reserved for future grants under the Plan. The shares issuable pursuant to the registration statements on Form S-8 will be freely tradable in the public market, except for shares held by affiliates.

The sale of a substantial number of shares of our common stock or securities convertible into, or exchangeable or exercisable for, shares of our common stock, whether directly by us in future offerings or by our existing stockholders in the secondary market, the perception that such issuances or resales could occur or the availability for future issuances or resale of shares of our common stock or securities convertible into, or exchangeable or exercisable for, shares of our common stock could materially and adversely affect the market price of our common stock and our ability to raise capital through future offerings of equity or equity-related securities on attractive terms or at all.

In addition, our Board of Directors is authorized to designate and issue preferred stock without further stockholder approval, and we may issue other equity and equity-related securities that are senior to our common stock in the future for a number of reasons, including, without limitation, to support operations and growth, and to comply with any future changes in regulatory standards.

***Our principal stockholders currently own a substantial number of shares of our common stock and have the power to significantly influence the vote on all matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders.***

As of March 29, 2018, John M. Desmarais, one of our directors, beneficially owned 1,946,241 shares of our common stock (including 1,452,843 shares of our common stock issuable pursuant to currently exercisable options and warrants), representing 24.5% of the outstanding shares of our common stock. In addition, as of March 29, 2018, Westbury (Bermuda), Ltd., or Westbury, beneficially owned 1,151,662 shares of our common stock (including 199,182 shares of our common stock issuable pursuant to currently exercisable warrants), representing 17.2% of the outstanding shares of our common stock.

Mr. Desmarais and Westbury, through their beneficial ownership of our common stock, have the power to significantly influence the vote on all matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders, including the election of directors, amendments to our certificate of incorporation or bylaws, mergers or other business combination transactions and certain sales of assets outside the usual and regular course of business. The interests of Mr. Desmarais and Westbury may not coincide with the interests of our other stockholders, and they could take actions that advance their own interests to the detriment of our other stockholders.

***Anti-takeover provisions and the regulations to which we may be subject may make it more difficult for a third party to acquire control of us, even if the change in control would be beneficial to our stockholders.***

We are incorporated in Delaware. Anti-takeover provisions in Delaware law and our certificate of incorporation and bylaws could make it more difficult for a third party to acquire control of us and may prevent stockholders from receiving a premium for their shares of common stock. Our certificate of incorporation provides that our Board of Directors may issue up to 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, in one or more series, without stockholder approval and with such terms, preferences, rights and privileges as the Board of Directors may deem appropriate. These provisions and other factors may hinder or prevent a change in control, even if the change in control would be beneficial to, or sought by, our stockholders.

*In the event that a significant amount of our outstanding debt is converted into equity, the percentage ownership of existing stockholders will be substantially diluted.*

As of March 29, 2018, we had outstanding indebtedness in the amount of \$4,156,212. We intend to seek to have the debtholders convert all or a significant amount of such debt into equity. In the event of any such conversion, the percentage ownership of existing stockholders will be substantially diluted.

*We are an emerging growth company, and we cannot be certain if the reduced reporting requirements applicable to emerging growth companies will make our common stock less attractive to investors.*

We are an emerging growth company, as defined in The Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act, or the JOBS Act. For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this 10-K and our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding nonbinding advisory votes on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could remain as an emerging growth company until December 31, 2020, although circumstances could cause us to lose that status earlier.

Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, we may still qualify as a “smaller reporting company” which would allow us to take advantage of many of the same exemptions from disclosure requirements including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation. We cannot predict whether investors will find our common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and warrants and the prices for our securities may be more volatile.

**ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK.**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA**

The financial statements required by this Item 8 are included in this Annual Report following Item 16 hereof. As a smaller reporting company, we are not required to provide supplementary financial information.

**ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE.**

None.

**ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES.**

**Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

Disclosure controls are procedures that are designed with the objective of ensuring that information required to be disclosed in our reports filed under the Exchange Act, such as this Annual Report, is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. Disclosure controls are also designed with the objective of ensuring that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including the Principal Executive and Financial Officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. Internal controls are procedures which are designed with the objective of providing reasonable assurance that (1) our transactions are properly authorized, recorded and reported; and (2) our assets are safeguarded against unauthorized or improper use, to permit the preparation of our consolidated financial statements in conformity with United States generally accepted accounting principles.

In connection with the preparation of this Annual Report, management, with the participation of our Principal Executive and Financial Officer, has evaluated the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)). Based upon that evaluation, our Principal Executive and Financial Officer concluded that, as of December 31, 2017, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective.

**Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

***Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, our Principal Executive and Financial Officer, and effected by the Board of Directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with U.S. GAAP including those policies and procedures that: (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect our transactions and the disposition of our assets, (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP and that receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and Board of Directors, and (iii) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with policies and procedures may deteriorate.

Management conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the 2013 framework in *Internal Control – Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on this evaluation, management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2017.

#### ***Changes in Internal Controls***

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) during the quarter ended December 31, 2017 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

#### **Limitations of the Effectiveness of Control**

A control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Because of the inherent limitations of any control system, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues, if any, within a company have been detected.

#### **No Attestation Report of Registered Public Accounting Firm**

This Annual Report does not contain an attestation report of our independent registered public accounting firm regarding internal control over financial reporting since the rules for smaller reporting companies provide for this exemption.

#### **ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION.**

None.

### PART III

#### ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE.

##### **Directors and Executive Officers**

Information regarding our directors and executive officers is set forth below. Each of our officers devotes his or her full business time in providing services on our behalf.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Age</u>	<u>Positions Held</u>
Mark Weinreb	65	Chief Executive Officer, President and Chairman of the Board
Adam D. Bergstein	49	Senior Vice President, Planning and Business Development
Francisco Silva	43	Vice President of Research and Development
Mandy D. Clyde	36	Vice President of Operations and Secretary
Robert B. Catell	81	Director
John M. Desmarais	54	Director
A. Jeffrey Radov	66	Director
Charles S. Ryan	53	Director
Paul Jude Tonna	59	Director

##### **Mark Weinreb**

Mark Weinreb has served as our Chief Executive Officer since October 2010, as our President since February 2012 and as our Chairman of the Board since April 2011. From February 2003 to October 2009, Mr. Weinreb served as President of NeoStem, Inc. (now known as Caladrius Biosciences, Inc.), a public international biopharmaceutical company engaged in, among other things, adult stem cell-related operations. From October 2009 to October 2010, he was subject to a non-competition agreement with NeoStem and was not engaged in business. Mr. Weinreb also served as Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors of NeoStem from February 2003 to June 2006. In 1976, Mr. Weinreb joined Bio Health Laboratories, Inc., a state-of-the-art medical diagnostic laboratory providing clinical testing services for physicians, hospitals, and other medical laboratories. He became the laboratory administrator in 1978 and then an owner and the laboratory's Chief Operating Officer in 1982. In such capacity, he oversaw all technical and business facets, including finance and laboratory science technology. Mr. Weinreb left Bio Health Laboratories in 1989 when the business was sold. In 1992, Mr. Weinreb founded Big City Bagels, Inc., a national chain of franchised upscale bagel bakeries and became Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of such entity. Big City Bagels went public in 1995, and in 1999 Mr. Weinreb redirected the company and completed a merger with an Internet service provider. From 2000 to 2002, Mr. Weinreb served as Chief Executive Officer of Jestertek, Inc. (now known as Gesturetek, Inc.), a software development company pioneering gesture recognition and control using advanced interactive proprietary video technology. Mr. Weinreb received a Bachelor of Arts degree from Northwestern University and a Master of Science degree in Medical Biology from C.W. Post, Long Island University. We believe that Mr. Weinreb's executive-level management experience, his extensive experience in the adult stem cell sector and his service on our Board since October 2010 give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.



**Adam D. Bergstein**

Adam D. Bergstein has served as our Senior Vice President, Planning and Business Development since January 2018. From 2008 until 2017, Mr. Bergstein founded and served as Managing Member of PharmaShield, LLC, a pharmaceutical patent risk management company. Prior to founding PharmaShield, in 2007, Mr. Bergstein served as a visiting consultant to Precision Health Economics, an economics consulting group inside RAND Corporation. From 2000 to 2006, Mr. Bergstein was a private equity sponsor for a number of investing groups, including General Capital Management, Healthcare Investment Alliance, and Diamond Cluster Capital Management. Mr. Bergstein received a Master of Business Administration degree from Northwestern University's J.L. Kellogg Graduate School of Management and a Bachelor of Arts degree from the University of Pennsylvania.

**Francisco Silva**

Francisco Silva has served as our Vice President of Research and Development since March 2013, having also previously served in such position from April 2011 until March 2012. He served as our Research Scientist from March 2012 to June 2012 and as our Chief Scientist from June 2012 to March 2013. From 2007 to 2011, Mr. Silva served as Chief Executive Officer of DV Biologics LLC, and as President of DaVinci Biosciences, LLC, companies engaged in the commercialization of human based biologics for both research and therapeutic applications. From 2003 to 2007, Mr. Silva served as Vice President of Research and Development for PrimeGen Biotech LLC, a company engaged in the development of cell based platforms. From 2002 to 2003, he was a Research Scientist with PrimeGen Biotech and was responsible for the development of experimental designs that focused on germ line reprogramming stem cell platforms. Mr. Silva has taught courses in biology, anatomy and advanced tissue culture at California State Polytechnic University. He has obtained a number of patents relating to stem cells and has had numerous articles published with regard to stem cell research. Mr. Silva graduated from California State Polytechnic University with a degree in Biology. He also obtained a Graduate Presidential Fellowship and MBRS Fellowship from California State Polytechnic University.

**Mandy D. Clyde**

Mandy D. Clyde has been our Vice President of Operations since August 2009. She has served as our Secretary since December 2010 and served on our Board from September 2010 to April 2011. From 2006 to 2009, Ms. Clyde served as Educational Envoy and then CME/CE Coordinator for Professional Resources in Management Education, an accredited provider of continuing medical education. She conducted needs assessments nationally to determine in which areas clinicians most needed current education. She also oversaw onsite educational meetings and analyzed data for outcomes reporting. From 2005 to 2006, Ms. Clyde served as surgical coordinator for Eye Surgery Associates and the Rand Eye Institute, two prominent physician practices in Florida. Ms. Clyde has experience in medical editing for educational programs and is a published author of advanced scientific and clinical content on topics including Alzheimer's disease, breast cancer, sleep apnea and adult learning. She received a degree in Biology from Mercyhurst College.

**Robert B. Catell**

Robert B. Catell became a member of our Board of Directors in February 2016. Mr. Catell served as Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of KeySpan Corporation and KeySpan Energy Delivery, the former Brooklyn Union Gas, from 1998 to 2007. His career with Brooklyn Union Gas started in 1958. Following National Grid's acquisition of KeySpan Corporation in 2007, Mr. Catell became Chairman of National Grid, U.S. and Deputy Chairman of National Grid plc. Mr. Catell currently serves as Chairman of the Board of the Advanced Energy Research and Technology Center (AERTC) at Stony Brook University, New York State Smart Grid Consortium, Cristo Rey Brooklyn High School, Futures in Education Endowment Fund, and the New York Energy Policy Institute's Advisory Council (NYEPI). He also serves on the NYS Economic Development Power Allocation Board (EDPAB) and the Board of Directors of Applied DNA Sciences, Inc., a company that uses biotechnology as a forensic foundation in creating unique security solutions addressing the challenges of modern commerce. In addition, Mr. Catell serves as a board member of a number of other business, governmental and not-for-profit organizations. Mr. Catell holds both a Master's and Bachelor's degree in Mechanical Engineering from City College of New York. We believe that Mr. Catell's executive-level management experience and his extensive experience in the Long Island community give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

**John M. Desmarais**

John M. Desmarais became a member of our Board of Directors in December 2015. Mr. Desmarais is the founding partner of Desmarais LLP, an intellectual property trial boutique established in 2010, and the founder and owner of Round Rock Research LLC, a patent licensing company. From 1997 to 2009, he was a partner at the international law firm of Kirkland & Ellis LLP and served as a member of the firm's Management Committee from 2004 to 2009. Prior to joining Kirkland, and after practicing in the area of intellectual property litigation and counseling for several years, he left private practice to serve as an Assistant United States Attorney in the Southern District of New York, where for three years he represented the federal government in criminal jury trials. Mr. Desmarais is a member of the bars of New York and Washington, D.C., the United States Supreme Court, the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals, and various other federal district courts and courts of appeal. He is also registered to practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Mr. Desmarais has been recognized by numerous publications as one of the nation's leading intellectual property litigators. Mr. Desmarais obtained a degree in Chemical Engineering from Manhattan College and a law degree from New York University. We believe that Mr. Desmarais' business and legal experience, including his extensive experience in the area of intellectual property, give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

### **A. Jeffrey Radov**

A. Jeffrey Radov became a member of our Board and Chair of our Audit Committee in April 2011. Mr. Radov is an entrepreneur and businessman with more than 35 years of experience in media, communications and financial endeavors. Since 2002, he has served as the Managing Partner of Walworth Group, which provides consulting and advisory services to a variety of businesses, including hedge funds, media, entertainment and Internet companies, financial services firms and early stage ventures. Mr. Radov is also an advisor to GeekVentures, LLC, an incubator for technology startups in Israel. From 2008 to 2010, Mr. Radov was a Principal and Chief Operating Officer at Aldebaran Investments, LLC, a registered investment advisor. From 2005 to 2008, Mr. Radov was Chief Operating Officer at EagleRock Capital Management, a group of hedge funds. Prior to joining EagleRock, Mr. Radov was a founding investor in and Board member of Edusoft, Inc., an educational software company. From 2001 to 2002, Mr. Radov was a Founder-in-Residence at SAS Investors, an early-stage venture fund. From 1999 to 2001, Mr. Radov was CEO and co-founder of VocaLoca, Inc., an innovator in consumer-generated audio content on the Internet. Mr. Radov was a founding executive of About.Com, Inc., an online information source, and was its EVP of Business Development and Chief Financial Officer from its inception. In 1996, prior to founding About.Com, Mr. Radov was a Director at Prodigy Systems Company, a joint venture of IBM and Sears. Mr. Radov was also a principal in the management of a series of public limited partnerships that invested in the production and distribution of more than 130 major motion pictures. From 1982 to 1984, Mr. Radov was the Director of Finance at Rainbow Programming Enterprises, a joint venture among Cablevision Systems Corporation, Cox Broadcasting and Daniels & Associates. From 1977 to 1981, Mr. Radov was Director of Marketing at Winklevoss & Associates. Mr. Radov earned a Masters of Business Administration from The Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania and holds a Bachelor of Arts degree from Cornell University. We believe that Mr. Radov's executive-level management experience and his extensive experience in the finance industry give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

### **Charles S. Ryan**

Dr. Charles S. Ryan became a member of our Board in April 2015. Since October 2016, Dr. Ryan has served as Chief Executive Officer of Orthobond, Inc., a company that seeks to improve the performance and safety of medical devices through the use of proprietary non-polymer technology. From March 2015 to May 2016, Dr. Ryan served as Vice President, General Counsel of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, or CSH Laboratory, a not-for-profit research and education institution at the forefront of molecular biology and genetics, with research programs focusing on cancer, neuroscience, plant biology, genomics and quantitative biology. From 2003 to 2014, he served as Senior Vice President and Chief Intellectual Property Counsel at Forest Laboratories, Inc., a New York Stock Exchange company that developed and marketed pharmaceutical products in a variety of therapeutic categories including central nervous system, cardiovascular, anti-infective, respiratory, gastrointestinal, and pain management medicine. Dr. Ryan has over 20 years experience in managing all aspects of intellectual property litigation, conducting due diligence investigations and prosecuting patent and trademark applications in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries. He also serves as a director of Applied DNA Sciences, Inc., a company that uses biotechnology as a forensic foundation in creating unique security solutions addressing the challenges of modern commerce. Dr. Ryan earned a doctorate in Oral Biology and Pathology from Stony Brook University and a law degree from Western New England University. We believe that Dr. Ryan's executive-level management and legal experience give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

## Paul Jude Tonna

Paul Jude Tonna became a member of our Board and Chair of our Compensation Committee in June 2014. Mr. Tonna is a highly regarded community leader and an accomplished businessman with an extensive history of public service. From 1994 to 2005 he served as a Suffolk County, New York Legislator, and from 2000 through 2002 was its Presiding Officer. He currently serves as Executive Director and a member of the Board of Advisors for The Energeia Partnership at Molloy College, a leadership academy based in Rockville Centre, New York, dedicated to identifying and addressing the serious, complex and multi-dimensional issues challenging the Long Island region. Mr. Tonna is a former Adjunct Professor in Theology & Religious Studies at St. John's University. He served as Chairman of the Suffolk County Industrial Development Agency, and currently serves as Trustee of the Long Island State Parks & Recreation Commission and as Public Trustee of the Stationary Engineers Industry Stabilization Fund. Mr. Tonna is a board member of The Advanced Energy Research & Technology Center at Stony Brook University, The Long Island Index Advisory Board and Erase Racism's College of Advisors. He also serves as the Executive Director of the Suffolk County Village Officials Association and the United States Green Building Council-Long Island Chapter. Mr. Tonna is a founding director of Empire National Bank and Chairman and Commissioner of the South Huntington Water District. Mr. Tonna holds an undergraduate degree in Philosophy from New York University and a Master's degree in Theology from Immaculate Conception Seminary, and he conducted doctoral studies in Systemic Theology at Fordham University. We believe that Mr. Tonna's executive-level management experience and his extensive experience in the Long Island community give him the qualifications and skills to serve as one of our directors.

## Scientific Advisors

### Scientific Advisory Board

The following persons are the members of our Scientific Advisory Board:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Principal Positions</b>
Wayne Marasco, M.D., Ph.D. Chairman	Professor, Department of Cancer Immunology & AIDS, Dana-Farber Cancer Institute; Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School; Principal Faculty Member, Harvard Stem Cell Institute
Naiyer Imam, M.D.	Chairman and President, First Medicine, Inc., an international telemedicine corporation dedicated to virtual physician services and chronic disease management
Wayne J. Olan, M.D.	Director, Interventional and Endovascular Neurosurgery; Associate Professor, Neurosurgery and Radiology, George Washington University Medical Center; Consulting Physician, Department of Radiology, National Institutes of Health
Joy Cavagnaro, Ph.D., DABT, RAC	President and Founder, Access BIO, L.C.; Fellow, Academy of Toxicological Sciences and the Regulatory Professional Society; Formerly Senior Pharmacologist and Director of Quality Assurance, Food and Drug Administration's Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research

## Family Relationships

There are no family relationships among any of our executive officers and directors.

## Term of Office

We have a classified Board of Directors. The directors will hold office until the respective annual meetings of stockholders indicated below and until their respective successors are elected and qualified or until their earlier resignation or removal.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Class</u>	<u>Term Expires</u>
Mark Weinreb	III	2020
Robert B. Catell	I	2018
John M. Desmarais	II	2019
A. Jeffrey Radov	III	2020
Charles S. Ryan	I	2018
Paul Jude Tonna	II	2019

Each executive officer will hold office until the initial meeting of the Board of Directors following the next annual meeting of stockholders and until his or her successor is elected and qualified or until his or her earlier resignation or removal.

## Audit Committee

The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors is responsible for overseeing our accounting and financial reporting processes and the audits of our financial statements. The members of the Audit Committee are Messrs. Radov (Chair), Ryan and Tonna.

## Audit Committee Financial Expert

Our Board of Directors has determined that Mr. Radov is an “audit committee financial expert,” as that is defined in Item 407(d)(5) of Regulation S-K. Mr. Radov is an “independent director” based on the definition of independence in Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) of The Nasdaq Stock Market.

## Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16 of the Exchange Act requires that reports of beneficial ownership of common stock and changes in such ownership be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission by Section 16 “reporting persons,” including directors, certain officers, holders of more than 10% of the outstanding common stock and certain trusts of which reporting persons are trustees. We are required to disclose in this Annual Report each reporting person whom we know to have failed to file any required reports under Section 16 on a timely basis during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017. To our knowledge, based solely on a review of copies of Forms 3, 4 and 5 filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and written representations that no other reports were required, during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, our officers, directors and 10% stockholders complied with all Section 16(a) filing requirements applicable to them, except that Francisco Silva, our Vice President of Research and Development, filed one Form 4 late (reporting two transactions).

## Code of Ethics for Senior Financial Officers

Our Board of Directors has adopted a Code of Ethics for our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions. A copy of the Code of Ethics is posted on our website, [www.biorestorative.com](http://www.biorestorative.com). We intend to satisfy the disclosure requirement under Item 5.05(c) of Form 8-K regarding an amendment to, or a waiver from, our Code of Ethics by posting such information on our website, [www.biorestorative.com](http://www.biorestorative.com).

## ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION.

### Summary Compensation Table

The following Summary Compensation Table sets forth all compensation earned in all capacities during the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 by (i) our principal executive officer, (ii) our two most highly compensated executive officers, other than our principal executive officer, who were serving as executive officers as of December 31, 2017 and whose total compensation for the 2017 fiscal year, as determined by Regulation S-K, Item 402, exceeded \$100,000, (iii) a person who would have been included as one of our two most highly compensated executive officers, other than our principal executive officer, but for the fact that he was not serving as one of our executive officers as of December 31, 2017 (the individuals falling within categories (i), (ii) and (iii) are collectively referred to as the "Named Executive Officers"):

Name and Principal Position	Year	Salary	Bonus (1)	Option Awards Earned (2)	All Other Compensation	Total
Mark Weinreb, Chief Executive Officer	2017	\$ 400,000	\$ 32,000	\$ 784,700 (3)	\$ 7,200 (4)	\$ 1,223,900 (4)
	2016	\$ 400,000	\$ 96,000	\$ 887,000 (5)	\$ 7,200 (6)	\$ 1,390,200 (6)
Edward Field President of Disc/Spine Division (7)	2017	\$ 175,000	\$ 18,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 193,000
	2016	\$ 300,000	\$ 36,000	\$ 263,000 (8)	\$ -	\$ 599,000
Francisco Silva, VP of Research and Development	2017	\$ 250,000	\$ 6,000	\$ 200,400 (9)	\$ -	\$ 456,400
	2016	\$ 250,000	\$ 26,000	\$ 197,200 (10)	\$ -	\$ 473,200
Mandy Clyde, VP of Operations (12)	2017	\$ 130,000	\$ -	\$ 135,100 (11)	\$ -	\$ 265,100
	2016	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

(1) Represents bonus amounts earned pursuant to the achievement of certain performance goals.

(2) The amounts reported in this column represent the grant date fair value of the option awards granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. For a detailed discussion of the assumptions used in estimating fair values, see Note 10 – Stockholders' Deficiency in the notes that accompany our consolidated financial statements included in this Annual Report following Item 16 hereof.

- (3) During 2017, Mr. Weinreb was granted a ten-year option under our 2010 Equity Participation Plan, or the Plan, for the purchase of 275,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.35 per share. Such option is exercisable to the extent of 91,667 shares as of each of the first and second anniversaries of the date of grant and 91,666 shares as of the third anniversary of the date of grant. See “Employment Agreements” below for a discussion of certain provisions relating to the options granted to Mr. Weinreb.
- (4) Of the aggregate \$1,223,900 earned during 2017, \$784,700 represents the grant date value of non-cash stock-based compensation awards, irrespective of the vesting period of those awards. Of the \$439,200 earned, cash compensation \$178,113 and \$176,479 were paid in cash during 2017 and 2018 (prior to the date of the filing of this Annual Report), respectively, and \$84,608 remains unpaid for 2017. All Other Compensation represents an automobile allowance paid to Mr. Weinreb in 2017.
- (5) During 2016, Mr. Weinreb was granted a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 275,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.73 per share. Such option is exercisable to the extent of 91,667 shares as of each of the first and second anniversaries of the date of grant and 91,666 shares as of the third anniversary of the date of grant. See “Employment Agreements” below for a discussion of certain provisions relating to the options granted to Mr. Weinreb.
- (6) Of the aggregate \$1,390,200 earned during 2016, \$887,000 represents the grant date value of non-cash stock-based compensation awards, irrespective of the vesting period of those awards. Of the \$503,200 earned cash compensation, \$7,200 and \$496,000 were paid in cash during 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$0 remains unpaid for 2016. All Other Compensation represents an automobile allowance paid to Mr. Weinreb in 2016.
- (7) Mr. Field resigned as an officer on July 24, 2017.
- (8) During 2016, Mr. Field was granted a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 80,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.73 per share. Such option was exercisable to the extent of 26,667 shares as of each of the first and second anniversaries of the date of grant and 26,666 shares as of the third anniversary of the date of grant. As a result of Mr. Field’s resignation on July 24, 2017, such option has terminated to the extent not vested as of such date.
- (9) During 2017, Mr. Silva was granted a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 80,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$2.80 per share. Such option is exercisable to the extent of 26,667 shares as of each of the first and second anniversaries of the date of grant and 26,666 shares as of the third anniversary of the date of grant.
- (10) During 2016, Mr. Silva was granted a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 60,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.73 per share. Such option is exercisable to the extent of 20,000 shares as of each of the first, second and third anniversaries of the date of grant.
- (11) During 2017, Ms. Clyde was granted a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 30,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$2.80 per share and a ten-year option under the Plan for the purchase of 20,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.35 per share. Such options are exercisable to the extent of 16,667 shares as of each of the first and second anniversaries of the date of grant and 16,666 shares as of the third anniversary of the date of grant.
- (12) Ms. Clyde was not a Named Executive Officer during 2016.

## Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End

The following table provides information on outstanding equity awards as of December 31, 2017 to the Named Executive Officers:

Name	Option Awards					Stock Awards			Equity incentive plan awards: Market or payout unearned shares, units or other rights that have not vested
	Number of securities underlying unexercised options exercisable	Number of securities underlying unexercised options unexercisable	Equity incentive plan awards: Number of securities underlying unexercised unearned options	Option exercise price	Option expiration date	Number of shares or units of stock that have not vested	Market value of shares of units that have not vested	Equity incentive plan awards: Number of unearned shares, units or other rights that have not vested	
Mark Weinreb	4,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	12/14/2020	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	50,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/10/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	20,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	12/7/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	12,500	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/4/2023	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	50,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/18/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	150,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/23/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	173,334	34,666(1)	-	\$ 4.70	9/4/2025	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	183,334	91,666(2)	-	\$ 3.73	6/10/2026	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mark Weinreb	91,667	183,333(3)	-	\$ 3.35	6/23/2027	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Edward L. Field	16,667	-	-	\$ 4.70	7/24/2018	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Edward L. Field	8,334	-	-	\$ 4.70	7/24/2018	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Edward L. Field	26,667	-	-	\$ 3.73	7/24/2018	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	4,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	4/4/2021	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	150	-	-	\$ 4.70	6/23/2021	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	1,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	11/16/2021	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	2,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/10/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	4,500	-	3,000(4)	\$ 4.70	5/2/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	4,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	12/7/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	5,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/4/2023	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	12,500	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/18/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	2,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	3/12/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	37,500	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/23/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	16,667	8,333(5)	-	\$ 4.70	9/4/2025	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	20,000	40,000(6)	-	\$ 3.73	6/10/2026	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Francisco Silva	-	80,000(7)	-	\$ 2.80	7/12/2027	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mandy D. Clyde	4,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	12/14/2020	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mandy D. Clyde	300	-	-	\$ 4.70	4/21/2021	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mandy D. Clyde	1,500	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/10/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mandy D. Clyde	2,500	-	-	\$ 4.70	12/7/2022	-	\$ -	-	\$ -
Mandy D. Clyde	4,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/4/2023	-	\$ -	-	\$ -



Mandy D. Clyde	6,250	-	-	\$ 4.70	2/18/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-
Mandy D. Clyde	10,000	-	-	\$ 4.70	10/23/2024	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-
Mandy D. Clyde	17,000	8,500(8)	-	\$ 4.70	9/4/2025	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-
Mandy D. Clyde	13,334	26,666(9)	-	\$ 3.73	6/10/2026	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-
Mandy D. Clyde	-	30,000(10)	-	\$ 2.80	7/12/2027	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-
Mandy D. Clyde	-	20,000(11)	-	\$ 3.35	8/10/2027	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-

- (1) Option is exercisable on September 4, 2018.
- (2) Option is exercisable on June 10, 2018.
- (3) Option is exercisable to the extent of 91,667 shares on June 23, 2018 and 91,666 shares on June 23, 2019.
- (4) Options are exercisable commencing on the date (provided that such date is during Mr. Silva's employment with us), if any, on which either (i) the FDA approves a biologics license application made by us with respect to any biologic product or (ii) a 510(k) Premarket Notification submission is made by us to the FDA with respect to a certain device.
- (5) Option is exercisable on September 4, 2018.
- (6) The option is exercisable to the extent of 20,000 shares on each of June 10, 2018 and June 10, 2019.
- (7) Option is exercisable to the extent of 26,667 shares on each of July 12, 2018 and July 12, 2019 and 26,666 shares on July 12, 2020.
- (8) Option is exercisable on September 4, 2018.
- (9) Option is exercisable to the extent of 13,333 shares on each of June 10, 2018 and June 10, 2019.
- (10) Option is exercisable to the extent of 10,000 shares on each of July 12, 2018, July 12, 2019 and July 12, 2020.
- (11) Option is exercisable to the extent of 6,667 shares on each of August 10, 2018 and August 10, 2019 and 6,666 shares on August 10, 2020.

### **Employment Agreements**

In March 2015, we entered into an employment agreement with Mark Weinreb, our Chief Executive Officer. The employment agreement was initially scheduled to expire on December 31, 2017. In March 2018, we and Mr. Weinreb agreed to extend the term of Mr. Weinreb's employment agreement to December 31, 2019. Pursuant to the employment agreement, Mr. Weinreb is entitled to receive a salary of \$400,000 per annum. Mr. Weinreb was entitled to receive an annual bonus for 2015 equal to 50% of his annual base salary and was entitled to receive an annual bonus for 2016 and 2017 of up to 40% and 50% of his annual base salary, respectively, in the event certain performance goals, as determined by our Compensation Committee, were satisfied. Mr. Weinreb is entitled to receive an annual bonus for 2018 and 2019 equal to 50% of his annual base salary in the event certain performance goals, as determined by our Compensation Committee, are satisfied. Pursuant to the employment agreement, in the event that Mr. Weinreb's employment is terminated by us without "cause", or Mr. Weinreb terminates his employment for "good reason" (each as defined in the employment agreement), Mr. Weinreb would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to one time his then annual base salary and certain benefits, plus \$100,000 (in lieu of bonus). In addition, pursuant to the employment agreement, Mr. Weinreb would be entitled to receive such severance in the event that the term of his employment agreement is not extended beyond March 31, 2018 and, within three months of such expiration date, his employment is terminated by us without "cause" or Mr. Weinreb terminates his employment for any reason. Further, in the event that Mr. Weinreb's employment is terminated by us without "cause", or Mr. Weinreb terminates his employment for "good reason", following a "change in control" (as defined in the employment agreement), Mr. Weinreb would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to one and one-half times his then annual base salary and certain benefits, plus \$300,000 (in lieu of bonus). Pursuant to the employment agreement, with respect to options granted to Mr. Weinreb during the term of his employment with us, such options shall vest and become exercisable if Mr. Weinreb is entitled to receive severance based upon a termination of his employment as set forth above. In addition, pursuant to the employment agreement, to the extent that an option granted to Mr. Weinreb during his term of his employment with us becomes exercisable (whether due to the passage of time or otherwise), such option shall remain exercisable until its expiration date notwithstanding any termination of employment with us.

Effective February 9, 2015, we entered into an at will employment agreement with Edward L. Field, President of our Disc/Spine Division. Pursuant to the employment agreement, Mr. Field was entitled to receive a salary of \$300,000 per annum. In addition, pursuant to the employment agreement, Mr. Field was entitled to receive an annual bonus of up to 30% of his annual salary (up to 24% of his annual salary for 2016) based on the satisfaction of certain performance goals. Further, pursuant to the employment agreement, in the event that Mr. Field's employment with us was terminated without cause, Mr. Field would have been entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to 50% of his then annual base salary. Mr. Field resigned his employment with us effective July 24, 2017.

Effective April 5, 2011, we entered into an at will employment agreement with Francisco Silva, our Vice President of Research and Development. Pursuant to the employment agreement, as amended in January 2018, Mr. Silva is currently entitled to receive a salary of \$287,500 per annum. In addition, pursuant to the employment agreement, as amended, Mr. Silva is entitled to receive an annual bonus of up to 20% of his annual salary (up to 16% of his annual salary for 2016) based on the satisfaction of certain performance goals. Further, pursuant to the employment agreement, as amended, in the event that Mr. Silva's employment with us is terminated without cause, Mr. Silva would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to 50% of his then annual base salary.

Effective December 1, 2010, we entered into an at will employment agreement with Mandy Clyde, our Vice President of Operations. Pursuant to the employment agreement, as amended, Ms. Clyde is currently entitled to receive a salary of \$149,500 per annum. Further, pursuant to the employment agreement, in the event that Ms. Clyde's employment with us is terminated without cause, Ms. Clyde would be entitled to receive a cash severance amount of \$50,000.

## DIRECTOR COMPENSATION

The following table sets forth certain information concerning the compensation of our non-employee directors for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017:

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash	Stock Awards	Option Awards <sup>(1)</sup>	Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation	Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Earnings	All Other Compensation	Total
Robert B. Catell	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 279,500 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 319,500
John M. Desmarais	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 349,400 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 389,400
A. Jeffrey Radov	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 349,400 <sup>(4)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 389,400
Charles S. Ryan	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 279,500 <sup>(5)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 319,500
Paul Jude Tonna	\$ 40,000	\$ -	\$ 349,400 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 389,400

(1) The amounts reported in this column represent the grant date fair value of the option awards granted during the year ended December 31, 2017, calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. For a detailed discussion of the assumptions used in estimating fair values, see Note 10 – Stockholders' Deficiency in the notes that accompany our consolidated financial statements in this Annual Report following Item 16 hereof.

(2) As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Catell held options for the purchase of 144,000 shares of common stock.

(3) As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Desmarais held options for the purchase of 175,000 shares of common stock.

(4) As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Radov held options for the purchase of 491,000 shares of common stock.

(5) As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Ryan held options for the purchase of 181,000 shares of common stock.

(6) As of December 31, 2017, Mr. Tonna held options for the purchase of 289,000 shares of common stock.

Each of Messrs. Catell, Desmarais, Radov, Ryan and Tonna, our non-employee directors, is entitled to receive, as compensation for his services as a director, \$30,000 per annum plus \$10,000 per annum for all committee service, in each case payable quarterly (subject to our cash needs). Our non-employee directors also receive stock options, from time to time, in consideration of their services.

**ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS.**

**Principal Stockholders**

The following table sets forth certain information regarding the beneficial ownership of our common stock, as of March 29, 2018, known by us, through transfer agent records, to be held by: (i) each person who beneficially owns 5% or more of the shares of common stock then outstanding; (ii) each of our directors; (iii) each of our Named Executive Officers (as defined above); and (iv) all of our directors and executive officers as a group.

The information in this table reflects “beneficial ownership” as defined in Rule 13d-3 of the Exchange Act. To our knowledge, and unless otherwise indicated, each shareholder has sole voting power and investment power over the shares listed as beneficially owned by such shareholder, subject to community property laws where applicable. Percentage ownership is based on 6,483,253 shares of common stock outstanding as of March 29, 2018.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner	Number of Shares Beneficially Owned	Approximate Percent of Class
John M. Desmarais 230 Park Avenue New York, New York	1,946,241(1)	24.5%
Westbury (Bermuda) Ltd. Westbury Trust Victoria Hall 11 Victoria Street Hamilton, HMEC Bermuda	1,151,662(2)	17.2%
Mark Weinreb 40 Marcus Drive, Suite One Melville, New York	814,835(3)	11.3%
Robert Austin Sperling Jr. 22 East Lake Drive Annapolis, Maryland	479,310(4)	7.3%
A. Jeffrey Radov 8 Walworth Avenue Scarsdale, New York	358,251(5)	5.2%
Paul Jude Tonna 69 Chichester Road Huntington, New York	241,834(6)	3.6%
Robert B. Catell 62 Osborne Road Garden City, New York	227,400(7)	3.4%
Charles S. Ryan 1302 Ridge Road Laurel Hollow, New York	174,002(8)	2.6%
Francisco Silva 40 Marcus Drive, Suite One Melville, New York	113,562(9)	1.7%
Mandy Clyde 40 Marcus Drive, Suite One Melville, New York	58,884(10)	*
Edward L. Field 40 Marcus Drive, Suite One Melville, New York	51,668(11)	*
All directors and executive officers as a group (9 persons)	3,935,011(12)	40.7%

---

\* Less than 1%

- (1) Based upon Schedule 13D filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) and other information known to us. Includes 1,452,843 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of currently exercisable options and warrants (including warrants for the purchase of 40,000 shares of common stock held by a trust for which Mr. Desmarais and his wife serve as the trustees and which was established for the benefit of his immediate family).
- (2) Based upon Schedule 13D filed with the SEC and other information known to us. Includes 199,182 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of currently exercisable warrants. The shares and warrants are owned directly by Westbury (Bermuda) Ltd. which is 100% owned by Westbury Trust.
- (3) Includes 734,835 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (4) Includes 41,590 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of currently exercisable warrants.
- (5) Includes 345,751 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (6) Represents (i) 6,000 shares of common stock held jointly with Mr. Tonna’s wife and (ii) 205,834 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (7) Includes 151,534 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of currently exercisable options and warrants.
- (8) Includes 131,085 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (9) Includes (i) 170 shares of common stock held in an individual retirement account for the benefit of Mr. Silva and (ii) 109,317 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (10) Represents shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options that were then exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (11) Represents shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options that were then exercisable currently or within 60 days.
- (12) Includes 3,190,083 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants that are exercisable currently or within 60 days.

## Securities Authorized for Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans

The following table sets forth information as of December 31, 2017 with respect to compensation plans (including individual compensation arrangements) under which our common stock are authorized for issuance, aggregated as follows:

- All compensation plans previously approved by security holders; and
- All compensation plans not previously approved by security holders.

### EQUITY COMPENSATION PLAN INFORMATION

	Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options (a)	Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options (b)	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	3,122,202	\$ 4.25	1,082,798
Total	3,122,202	\$ 4.25	1,082,798

### ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE.

#### **John M. Desmarais**

In March 2016, John M. Desmarais, one of our non-employee directors and principal stockholders, purchased 250,000 shares of our common stock at a price of \$4.00 per share (gross proceeds of \$1,000,000) and, in consideration thereof, received the following warrants: (i) a five year warrant for the purchase of 250,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share; (ii) an eight month warrant for the purchase of 444,444 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.50 per share; and (iii) a one year warrant for the purchase of 400,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share.

In June 2016, we borrowed \$500,000 from a trust for which Mr. Desmarais and his wife serve as the trustees and which was established for the benefit of Mr. Desmarais's immediate family, or the Desmarais Trust. The promissory note evidencing the loan, or the Desmarais Trust Note, provided for the payment of the principal amount, together with interest at the rate of 10% per annum, in July 2017. In July 2017, we and the Desmarais Trust agreed to amend the Desmarais Trust Note to provide for a maturity date of December 1, 2017 and an increase in the interest rate to 15% per annum effective July 1, 2017. In the event that, prior to the maturity date of the Desmarais Trust Note, we receive net proceeds of \$10,000,000 from a single equity or debt financing (as opposed to a series of related or unrelated financings), the Desmarais Trust has the right to require that we prepay the amount due under the Desmarais Trust Note (subject to the consent of the party that provided the particular financing). In consideration of the loan, we issued to the Desmarais Trust a five-year warrant for the purchase of 40,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.

In September 2016, Mr. Desmarais purchased 80,000 shares of our common stock at a purchase price of \$3.00 per share (gross proceeds of \$240,000). In consideration of the purchase, we issued to Mr. Desmarais a five year warrant for the purchase of 80,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share and extended the expiration dates of the warrants held by Mr. Desmarais for the purchase of 444,444 and 400,000 shares of our common stock for a period of one year to November 18, 2017 and March 18, 2018, respectively.

In December 2016, we borrowed \$60,000 from Mr. Desmarais. The promissory note evidencing the loan provided for the payment of \$65,000 on January 31, 2017. In consideration of the loan, we further extended the expiration dates of the warrants held by Mr. Desmarais for the purchase of 444,444 and 400,000 shares of our common stock to December 31, 2018. In February 2017, we entered into an exchange agreement with Mr. Desmarais pursuant to which Mr. Desmarais exchanged the principal amount of the promissory note, together with accrued interest, for 21,731 shares of our common stock at an exchange price of \$3.00 per share and, in consideration thereof, received a five year warrant for the purchase of 21,731 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.

In July 2017, we borrowed \$175,000 from Mr. Desmarais. The promissory note evidencing the loan, or the Desmarais Note, provides for the payment of the principal amount, together with interest at the rate of 15% per annum, on December 1, 2017. In the event that, prior to the maturity date of the Desmarais Note, we receive net proceeds of \$10,000,000 from a single equity or debt financing (as opposed to a series of related or unrelated financings), Mr. Desmarais has the right to require that we prepay the amount due under the Desmarais Note (subject to the consent of the party that provided the particular financing). The payment of the Desmarais Note is secured by the grant of a security interest in our equipment and intellectual property. Concurrently, we agreed that the payment of the Desmarais Trust Note is also secured by the grant of such security interest.

In November 2017, we and Mr. Desmarais agreed that the due date for the payment of the Desmarais Note was extended to December 1, 2018. Concurrently, we agreed with the Desmarais Trust that the due date for the payment of the Desmarais Trust Note was also extended to December 1, 2018. In consideration of the note extensions by Mr. Desmarais and the Desmarais Trust, we agreed to reduce the exercise prices of certain warrants held by Mr. Desmarais for the purchase of an aggregate of 775,000 shares of our common stock from \$5.00 per share to \$4.00 per share and the exercise price of a certain warrant held by Mr. Desmarais for the purchase of 444,444 shares of our common stock from \$4.50 per share to \$4.00 per share.

## Others

Between March 2016 and May 2016, Robert B. Catell, one of our non-employee directors, purchased an aggregate of 50,000 shares of our common stock at a price of \$4.00 per share (aggregate gross proceeds of \$200,000) and, in consideration thereof, received five-year warrants for the purchase of an aggregate of 50,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share.

In August 2016, we borrowed \$100,000 from Mr. Catell. The promissory note evidencing the loan, or the Catell Note, provided for the payment of the principal amount, together with interest at the rate of 10% per annum, on February 5, 2017. In consideration of the loan, we issued to Mr. Catell a five-year warrant for the purchase of 8,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. In August 2017, we and Mr. Catell agreed that the outstanding principal amount of the note of \$50,000 will be payable on February 5, 2018. In consideration of such extension of the maturity date, we issued to Mr. Catell a five-year warrant for the purchase of 5,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. In the event that, prior to the maturity date of the Catell Note, we receive net proceeds of \$10,000,000 from a single equity or debt financing (as opposed to a series of related or unrelated financings), Mr. Catell has the right to require that we prepay the amount due under the Catell Note (subject to the consent of the party that provided the particular financing).

In December 2016, we borrowed \$30,000 from Mr. Catell. The promissory note evidencing the loan provided for the payment of \$32,500 on January 31, 2017. In February 2017, we entered into an exchange agreement with Mr. Catell pursuant to which Mr. Catell exchanged the principal amount of the promissory note, together with accrued interest, for 10,866 shares of our common stock at an exchange price of \$3.00 per share and, in consideration thereof, received a five year warrant for the purchase of 10,866 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.

In February 2017, the Compensation Committee of our Board of Directors reduced the exercise price of outstanding options for the purchase of an aggregate of 1,219,450 shares of our common stock (with exercise prices ranging between \$5.70 and \$30.00 per share) to \$4.70 per share, which was the closing price for our common stock on the day prior to the determination, as reported by the OTCQB. The exercise price reduction related to options held by, among others, our Named Executive Officers and directors with respect to the following number of shares: (i) Mark Weinreb, our President, Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board: 494,500 shares, (ii) A. Jeffrey Radov, one of our directors: 238,000 shares, (iii) Paul Jude Tonna, one of our directors: 100,000 shares, (iv) Dr. Charles S. Ryan, one of our directors: 35,000 shares, (v) Francisco Silva, our Vice President of Research and Development: 100,650 shares, and (vi) Edward L. Field, then President of our Disc/Spine Division: 50,000 shares.



In March 2017, we entered into exchange agreements with Messrs. Catell, Desmarais, Ryan and Tonna, each a non-employee director, pursuant to which accrued director fees were exchanged for our common stock at an exchange price of \$3.00 per share and, in consideration thereof, we issued to them five year warrants for the purchase of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share as follows: (i) Mr. Catell: \$45,000 for 15,000 shares and 15,000 warrants; (ii) Mr. Desmarais: \$50,000 for 16,667 shares and 16,667 warrants; (iii) Mr. Ryan: \$80,000 for 26,667 shares and 26,667 warrants; and (iv) Mr. Tonna: \$90,000 for 30,000 shares and 30,000 warrants.

In August 2017, we borrowed \$125,000 from Robert Austin Sperling, Jr., one of our principal stockholders. The promissory note evidencing the loan provided for the payment of the principal amount, together with interest at the rate of 12% per annum, on May 23, 2018. In the event that, prior to the maturity date of the note, we receive net proceeds of \$10,000,000 from a single equity or debt financing (as opposed to a series of related or unrelated financings), Mr. Sperling has the right to require that we prepay the amount due under the note (subject to the consent of the party that provided the particular financing). In consideration of the loan, we issued to Mr. Sperling a five-year warrant for the purchase of 15,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.

## **Director Independence**

### **Board of Directors**

Our Board of Directors is currently comprised of Mark Weinreb (Chair), Robert B. Catell, John M. Desmarais, A. Jeffrey Radov, Charles S. Ryan and Paul Jude Tonna. Each of Messrs. Catell, Desmarais, Radov, Ryan and Tonna is currently an “independent director” based on the definition of independence in Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) of The Nasdaq Stock Market.

### **Audit Committee**

The members of our Board’s Audit Committee currently are Messrs. Radov (Chair), Ryan and Tonna, each of whom is an “independent director” based on the definition of independence in Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) The Nasdaq Stock Market and Rule 10A-3(b)(1) under the Exchange Act.

### **Nominating Committee**

The members of our Board’s Nominating Committee currently are Messrs. Tonna (Chair), Radov and Ryan, each of whom is an “independent director” based on the definition of independence in Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) of The Nasdaq Stock Market.

### **Compensation Committee**

The members of our Board’s Compensation Committee currently are Messrs. Tonna (Chair), Catell and Radov, each of whom is an “independent director” based on the definition of independence in Listing Rule 5605(a)(2) of The Nasdaq Stock Market.

**ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES.**

Marcum LLP has served as our independent registered public accountants for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

The following is a summary of the fees billed or expected to be billed to us by Marcum LLP, our independent registered public accountants, for professional services rendered with respect to the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Audit fees (1)	\$ 144,551	\$ 118,000
Audit-related fees (2)	-	-
Tax fees (3)	9,000	9,000
All other fees (4)	-	-
	<u>\$ 153,551</u>	<u>\$ 127,000</u>

- (1) Audit Fees consist of fees billed and expected to be billed for services rendered for the audit of our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 and in connection with the filing of Forms S-1 and S-8 registration statements.
- (2) Audit-Related Fees consist of fees billed for assurance and related services that are reasonably related to the performance of the audit of our financial statements and are not reported under "Audit Fees."
- (3) Tax Fees consist of fees billed for professional services related to preparation of our U.S. federal and state income tax returns and tax advice.
- (4) All Other Fees consist of fees billed for products and services provided by our independent registered public accountants, other than those disclosed above.

The Audit Committee is responsible for the appointment, compensation and oversight of the work of the independent registered public accountants, and approves in advance any services to be performed by the independent registered public accountants, whether audit-related or not. The Audit Committee reviews each proposed engagement to determine whether the provision of services is compatible with maintaining the independence of the independent registered public accountants. The fees shown above were pre-approved either by our Board or our Audit Committee.

## **PART IV**

### **ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES.**

#### Exhibit No.

- 3.1 [Certificate of Incorporation, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated December 19, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 3.3](#)
- 3.2 [Certificate of Amendment of Certificate of Incorporation filed with the State of Delaware on July 2, 2015, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated July 6, 2015, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 3.1](#)
- 3.3 [Bylaws, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated December 19, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 3.4](#)
- 10.1 [2010 Equity Participation Plan, as amended, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.1](#)
- 10.2 [Executive Employment Agreement, dated as of March 9, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb \("Weinreb Employment Agreement"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.2](#)
- 10.3 [Amendment to Weinreb Employment Agreement, dated February 14, 2017, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated February 8, 2017, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.1.](#)
- 10.4 [Letter agreement, dated March 29, 2018, with regard to Weinreb Employment Agreement\\*](#)
- 10.5 [Stock Option Agreement, dated December 15, 2010, between Stem Cell Assurance, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form 10, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.17](#)
- 10.6 [Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement, dated May 10, 2011, between Stem Cell Assurance, Inc. and Francisco Silva \("Silva Employment Agreement"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form 10, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.23](#)
- 10.7 [Amendment to Silva Employment Agreement, dated November 4, 2011, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.27](#)
- 10.8 [Amendment to Silva Employment Agreement, dated May 3, 2012, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.29](#)
- 10.9 [Amendment to Silva Employment Agreement, dated December 7, 2012, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.30](#)
- 10.10 [Amendment to Silva Employment Agreement, dated March 9, 2015, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.20](#)

- 10.11 [Amendment to Silva Employment Agreement, dated March 1, 2017, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.10](#)
- 10.12 [Stock Option Agreement, dated April 5, 2011, between Stem Cell Assurance, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form 10, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.24](#)
- 10.13 [License Agreement, dated as of January 27, 2012, between Regenerative Sciences, LLC and BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. \("License Agreement"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.44](#)
- 10.14 [Amendment to License Agreement, dated March 21, 2012, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.45](#)
- 10.15 [Amendment to License Agreement, dated November 30, 2015, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.20](#)
- 10.16 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 10, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.46](#)
- 10.17 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 10, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.47](#)
- 10.18 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 10, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.49](#)
- 10.19 [Consulting Agreement, dated as of August 16, 2012, between Wayne A. Marasco, M.D., Ph.D. and BioRestorative Therapies, Inc., incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.56](#)
- 10.20 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.58](#)
- 10.21 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.59](#)
- 10.22 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2012, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.61](#)
- 10.23 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 4, 2013, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.59](#)

- 10.24 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 4, 2013, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.60](#)
- 10.25 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 4, 2013, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.62](#)
- 10.26 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 18, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.64](#)
- 10.27 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 18, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.65](#)
- 10.28 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 18, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.67](#)
- 10.29 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of March 12, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.70](#)
- 10.30 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 27, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.2](#)
- 10.31 [Lease, dated as of August 25, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and 50 Republic Road, LLC, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated August 25, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 99.1](#)
- 10.32 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 23, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.65](#)
- 10.33 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 23, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.66](#)
- 10.34 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 23, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.67](#)
- 10.35 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of October 23, 2014, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.70](#)

- 10.36 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 9, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Edward L. Field, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2014, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.73](#)
- 10.37 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of April 6, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Charles S. Ryan, J.D., Ph.D., incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.74](#)
- 10.38 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.77](#)
- 10.39 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and A. Jeffrey Radov, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.78](#)
- 10.40 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Edward L. Field, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.79](#)
- 10.41 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.80](#)
- 10.42 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.82](#)
- 10.43 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of September 4, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Charles S. Ryan, J.D., Ph.D., incorporated by reference to the registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-204672\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.83](#)
- 10.44 [Warrant, dated November 17, 2015, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais for the purchase of 125,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to Mr. Desmarais' Schedule 13D, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 7.2](#)
- 10.45 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of December 1, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and John M. Desmarais, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.64](#)
- 10.46 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of February 19, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Robert B. Catell, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.65](#)
- 10.47 [Warrant, dated February 29, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Robert B. Catell for the purchase of 37,500 shares of common stock incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.66](#)

- 10.48 [Warrant, dated March 18, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais for the purchase of 250,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to Amendment No. 1 to Mr. Desmarais' Schedule 13D, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 7.2](#)
- 10.49 [Warrant, dated March 18, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais for the purchase of 444,444 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to Amendment No. 1 to Mr. Desmarais' Schedule 13D, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 7.3](#)
- 10.50 [Warrant, dated March 18, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais for the purchase of 400,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to Amendment No. 1 to Mr. Desmarais' Schedule 13D, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 7.4](#)
- 10.51 [Form of Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 10, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and each of Robert B. Catell, John M. Desmarais, A. Jeffrey Radov, Charles S. Ryan and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.58](#)
- 10.52 [Form of Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 10, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and each of Edward L. Field and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.59](#)
- 10.53 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 10, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.60](#)
- 10.54 [Promissory Note, dated June 30, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Tuxis Trust in the principal amount of \\$500,000 \("Tuxis Note"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.61](#)
- 10.55 [Warrant, dated June 30, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Tuxis Trust for the purchase of 40,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.62](#)
- 10.56 [Letter agreement, dated November 17, 2017, with regard to Tuxis Note\\*](#)
- 10.57 [Promissory Note, dated August 5, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Robert B. Catell in the principal amount of \\$100,000, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.63](#)
- 10.58 [Warrant, dated August 5, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Robert B. Catell for the purchase of 8,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.64](#)
- 10.59 [Warrant, dated September 26, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais for the purchase of 80,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.65](#)
- 10.60 [Letter agreement, dated September 26, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and John M. Desmarais, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.66](#)

- 10.61 [Promissory Note, dated December 14, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais in the principal amount of \\$65,000, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.67](#)
- 10.62 [Letter agreement, dated December 14, 2016, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and John M. Desmarais, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.68](#)
- 10.63 [Form of Warrant, dated March 1, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to each of Robert B. Catell, John M. Desmarais, Charles S. Ryan and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.70](#)
- 10.64 [Convertible Promissory Note, with an original issue date of August 4, 2016, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to St. George Investments LLC in the principal amount of \\$215,250 \("St. George August 2016 Note"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.63](#)
- 10.65 [Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note, dated January 15, 2018, with regard to St. George August 2016 Note\\*](#)
- 10.66 [Convertible Promissory Note, with an original issue date of January 3, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to St. George Investments LLC in the principal amount of \\$242,000 \("St. George January 2017 Note"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.70](#)
- 10.67 [Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note, dated January 15, 2018, with regard to St. George January 2017 Note\\*](#)
- 10.68 [Convertible Promissory Note, with an original issue date of May 10, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to St. George Investments LLC in the principal amount of \\$180,000 \("St. George May 2017 Note"\), incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.72](#)
- 10.69 [Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note, dated February 15, 2018, with regard to St. George May 2017 Note\\*](#)
- 10.70 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 23, 2017, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Mark Weinreb, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.73](#)
- 10.71 [Form of Stock Option Agreement, dated as of June 23, 2017, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and each of Robert B. Catell, John M. Desmarais, A. Jeffrey Radov, Charles S. Ryan and Paul Jude Tonna, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.74](#)
- 10.72 [Letter agreement, dated as of July 5, 2017, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Tuxis Trust, incorporated by reference to the registrant's Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.75](#)



- 10.73 [Form of Stock Option Agreement, dated as of July 12, 2017, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Francisco Silva, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.76](#)
- 10.74 [Promissory Note, dated as of July 13, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to John M. Desmarais in the principal amount of \\$175,000 \(“Desmarais Note”\), incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.77](#)
- 10.75 [Security Agreement, dated as of July 13, 2017, by and among BioRestorative Therapies, Inc., Tuxis Trust and John M. Desmarais, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.78](#)
- 10.76 [Letter agreement, dated November 17, 2017, with regard to Desmarais Note\\*](#)
- 10.77 [Warrant, dated as of August 11, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Robert B. Catell for the purchase of 5,000 shares of common stock, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Form S-1 Registration Statement \(Registration No. 333-220843\), wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.79](#)
- 10.78 [Convertible Promissory Note, dated October 25, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Tangiers Global, LLC, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated October 27, 2017, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.1](#)
- 10.79 [Warrant, dated October 25, 2017, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Tangiers Global, LLC, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated October 27, 2017, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.1](#)
- 10.80 [Executive Employment Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2018, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Adam D. Bergstein, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated January 16, 2018, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.1](#)
- 10.81 [Stock Option Agreement, dated as of January 19, 2018, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Adam D. Bergstein, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Current Report on Form 8-K for an event dated January 16, 2018, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.2](#)
- 10.82 [Executive Employment Agreement, dated as of December 1, 2010, between Stem Cell Assurance, Inc \(now known as BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.\) and Mandy Clark \(now known as Mandy Clyde\), incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Form 10, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 10.14.](#)
- 10.83 [Convertible Promissory Note, dated March 27, 2018, issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. to Actus Fund, LLC\\*](#)
- 14 [Code of Ethics, incorporated by reference to the registrant’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011, wherein such document is identified as Exhibit 14](#)
- 21 [Subsidiaries\\*](#)
- 23 [Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm’s Consent\\*](#)
- 31.1 [Principal Executive Officer Certification\\*](#)
- 31.2 [Principal Financial Officer Certification\\*](#)
- 32 [Section 1350 Certification\\*\\*](#)
- 101.INS XBRL Instance Document \*
- 101.SCH XBRL Schema Document \*
- 101.CAL XBRL Calculation Linkbase Document\*
- 101.DEF XBRL Definition Linkbase Document\*
- 101.LAB XBRL Label Linkbase Document\*
- 101.PRE XBRL Presentation Linkbase Document\*

---

\* Filed herewith  
 \*\* Furnished herewith

**ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY.**

Not applicable.

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.**

Dated: April 2, 2018

By: /s/ Mark Weinreb

Mark Weinreb  
Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<b>Signature</b>	<b>Capacity</b>	<b>Date</b>
<u>/s/ Mark Weinreb</u> Mark Weinreb	Chief Executive Officer, President, Chairman of the Board and Director (Principal Executive Officer, Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	April 2, 2018
<u>/s/ Robert B. Catell</u> Robert B. Catell	Director	April 2, 2018
<u>/s/ John M. Desmarais</u> John M. Desmarais	Director	April 2, 2018
<u>/s/ A. Jeffrey Radov</u> A. Jeffrey Radov	Director	April 2, 2018
<u>/s/ Charles S. Ryan</u> Charles S. Ryan	Director	April 2, 2018
<u>/s/ Paul Jude Tonna</u> Paul Jude Tonna	Director	April 2, 2018

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

	<b><u>Page</u></b>
<a href="#"><u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u></a>	F-1
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016</u></a>	F-2
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016</u></a>	F-3
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Deficiency for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016</u></a>	F-4
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016</u></a>	F-5
<a href="#"><u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u></a>	F-7

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Shareholders and Board of Directors of  
BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.

**Opinion on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in stockholders’ deficiency and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “financial statements”). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

**Explanatory Paragraph – Going Concern**

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As more fully described in Note 2, the Company has a significant working capital deficiency, has incurred significant losses and needs to raise additional funds to meet its obligations and sustain its operations. These conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. Management’s plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note 2. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

**Basis for Opinion**

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits, we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

*/s/ Marcum LLP*

Marcum LLP

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2011.

New York, NY  
April 2, 2018

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Consolidated Balance Sheets**

	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Assets</b>		
<b>Current Assets:</b>		
Cash	\$ 451,680	\$ 31,822
Accounts receivable	38,000	6,000
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	30,030	35,578
<b>Total Current Assets</b>	<b>519,710</b>	<b>73,400</b>
Property and equipment, net	327,847	508,594
Intangible assets, net	888,950	963,845
Security deposit	22,100	34,176
<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,758,607</b>	<b>\$ 1,580,015</b>
<b>Liabilities and Stockholders' Deficiency</b>		
<b>Current Liabilities:</b>		
Accounts payable	\$ 2,454,944	\$ 2,283,981
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	1,885,551	1,574,659
Accrued interest	329,166	127,375
Current portion of notes payable, net of debt discount of \$336,229 and \$152,720 at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively	3,467,568	1,858,845
Derivative liabilities	216,073	-
<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	<b>8,353,302</b>	<b>5,844,860</b>
Accrued expenses, non-current portion	38,000	430,000
Accrued interest, non-current portion	9,591	7,681
Notes payable, non-current portion, net of debt discount of \$1,256 and \$27,244 at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively	194,282	297,756
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>8,595,175</b>	<b>6,580,297</b>
<b>Commitments and contingencies</b>		
<b>Stockholders' Deficiency:</b>		
Preferred stock, \$0.01 par value; Authorized, 5,000,000 shares; none issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016	-	-
Common stock, \$0.001 par value; Authorized, 30,000,000 shares; Issued and outstanding 6,112,473 and 4,699,035 shares at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively	6,112	4,699
Additional paid-in capital	44,561,773	36,954,817
Accumulated deficit	(51,404,453)	(41,959,798)
<b>Total Stockholders' Deficiency</b>	<b>(6,836,568)</b>	<b>(5,000,282)</b>
<b>Total Liabilities and Stockholders' Deficiency</b>	<b>\$ 1,758,607</b>	<b>\$ 1,580,015</b>

See Notes to these Consolidated Financial Statements

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Consolidated Statements of Operations**

	<b>For The Years Ended</b>	
	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 81,000	\$ 36,355
Cost of sales	-	102
Gross Profit	81,000	36,253
<b>Operating Expenses</b>		
Marketing and promotion	65,455	86,451
Consulting	2,334,212	1,605,917
Research and development	2,152,433	2,883,563
General and administrative	3,903,184	3,245,397
Total Operating Expenses	8,455,284	7,821,328
Loss From Operations	(8,374,284)	(7,785,075)
<b>Other (Expense) Income</b>		
Interest expense	(468,107)	(221,608)
Amortization of debt discount	(619,266)	(542,336)
Loss on extinguishment of notes payable, net	(59,938)	(58,787)
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	107,039	-
Warrant modification expense	(30,099)	(28,486)
Total Other Expense	(1,070,371)	(851,217)
<b>Net Loss</b>	<b>\$ (9,444,655)</b>	<b>\$ (8,636,292)</b>
Net Loss Per Share		
- Basic and Diluted	\$ (1.74)	\$ (2.10)
Weighted Average Number of Common Shares Outstanding		
- Basic and Diluted	5,422,389	4,105,820

See Notes to these Consolidated Financial Statements

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Deficiency  
For the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016**

	Common Stock		Additional	Accumulated	Treasury Stock		Total
	Shares	Amount	Paid-In Capital	Deficit	Shares	Amount	
<b>Balance - December 31, 2015</b>	3,338,661	\$ 3,339	\$ 29,443,704	\$ (33,323,506)	(27,932)	\$ (32,000)	\$ (3,908,463)
Shares and warrants issued for cash	956,833	956	3,497,382	-	-	-	3,498,338
Exercise of warrants for purchase of common stock	60,831	61	212,837	-	-	-	212,898
Conversion of notes payable and accrued interest into common stock	137,006	137	341,615	-	-	-	341,752
Shares issued in satisfaction of accrued services	13,208	13	27,540	-	-	-	27,553
Shares and warrants issued as debt discount in connection with notes payable	6,000	6	246,206	-	-	-	246,212
Shares and warrants issued in exchange for notes payable, convertible notes and accrued interest	167,027	167	352,426	-	-	-	352,593
Warrant modifications	-	-	96,634	-	-	-	96,634
Beneficial conversion features related to convertible notes payable	-	-	231,708	-	-	-	231,708
Stock-based compensation:							
- common stock	54,901	55	116,903	-	-	-	116,958
- options and warrants	-	-	2,436,702	-	-	-	2,436,702
Return of shares to treasury previously issued as compensation	-	-	-	-	(7,500)	(16,875)	(16,875)
Retirement of treasury shares	(35,432)	(35)	(48,840)	-	35,432	48,875	-
Net loss	-	-	-	(8,636,292)	-	-	(8,636,292)
<b>Balance - December 31, 2016</b>	4,699,035	\$ 4,699	\$ 36,954,817	\$ (41,959,798)	-	\$ -	\$ (5,000,282)
Shares and warrants issued for cash	361,335	361	1,083,639	-	-	-	1,084,000
Exercise of warrants for purchase of common stock	460,625	461	995,789	-	-	-	996,250
Conversion of notes payable and accrued interest into common stock	243,441	243	524,291	-	-	-	524,534
Shares and warrants issued in exchange for notes payable and accrued interest	132,082	132	421,170	-	-	-	421,302
Shares and warrants issued in satisfaction of accrued services	165,002	165	588,427	-	-	-	588,592
Shares and warrants issued or modified and recorded as debt discount in connection with notes payable	40,953	41	257,015	-	-	-	257,056
Reclassification of derivative liabilities to equity	-	-	9,019	-	-	-	9,019
Beneficial conversion features related to convertible notes payable	-	-	11,991	-	-	-	11,991
Warrant modifications	-	-	114,821	-	-	-	114,821
Stock-based compensation:							
- common stock	10,000	10	19,990	-	-	-	20,000
- options and warrants	-	-	3,580,804	-	-	-	3,580,804
Net loss	-	-	-	(9,444,655)	-	-	(9,444,655)
<b>Balance - December 31, 2017</b>	6,112,473	\$ 6,112	\$ 44,561,773	\$ (51,404,453)	-	\$ -	\$ (6,836,568)

See Notes to these Consolidated Financial Statements

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**

	<b>For The Years Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Cash Flows From Operating Activities</b>		
Net loss	\$ (9,444,655)	\$ (8,636,292)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Amortization of debt discount	619,266	542,336
Accretion of interest expense	206,284	40,052
Depreciation and amortization	259,259	258,425
Stock-based compensation	3,600,804	2,536,785
Loss on extinguishment of note payables, net	59,938	58,787
Loss (gain) on settlement of payables	100,895	(12,182)
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	(107,039)	-
Warrant modification expense	30,099	28,486
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	(32,000)	87,375
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	5,548	5,494
Security deposit	12,076	-
Accounts payable	185,963	(113,151)
Accrued interest, expenses and other current liabilities	649,741	201,210
<b>Total Adjustments</b>	<b>5,590,834</b>	<b>3,633,617</b>
<b>Net Cash Used In Operating Activities</b>	<b>(3,853,821)</b>	<b>(5,002,675)</b>
<b>Cash Flows From Investing Activities</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment	(3,617)	(188,764)
<b>Net Cash Used In Investing Activities</b>	<b>(3,617)</b>	<b>(188,764)</b>
<b>Cash Flows From Financing Activities</b>		
Proceeds from notes payable	2,542,222	1,894,000
Repayments of notes payable	(330,176)	(476,500)
Advances from an officer and a family member of an officer	43,515	292,090
Repayments of advances from an officer, a director and a family member of an officer	(58,515)	(364,120)
Proceeds from exercise of warrants	996,250	212,898
Sales of common stock and warrants for cash	1,084,000	3,498,338
<b>Net Cash Provided By Financing Activities</b>	<b>4,277,296</b>	<b>5,056,706</b>
<b>Net Increase (Decrease) In Cash</b>	<b>419,858</b>	<b>(134,733)</b>
<b>Cash - Beginning</b>	<b>31,822</b>	<b>166,555</b>
<b>Cash - Ending</b>	<b>\$ 451,680</b>	<b>\$ 31,822</b>

See Notes to these Consolidated Financial Statements



**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows — Continued**

**For The Years Ended  
December 31,**

	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Supplemental Disclosures of Cash Flow Information:</b>		
Cash paid during the year for:		
Interest	\$ 17,538	\$ 30,406
Non-cash investing and financing activities:		
Warrant modifications	\$ 114,821	\$ 96,634
Shares and warrants issued as debt discount in connection with notes payable	\$ 257,056	\$ 246,212
Shares and warrants issued in exchange for notes payable and accrued interest	\$ 421,302	\$ 352,593
Conversion of notes payable and accrued interest into common stock	\$ 524,534	\$ 341,752
Shares issued in satisfaction of accrued consulting and director services	\$ 588,592	\$ 27,553
Derivative liabilities recorded as debt discount	\$ 332,131	\$ -
Reclassification of derivative liabilities to equity	\$ 9,019	\$ -
Beneficial conversion features set up as debt discount	\$ 11,991	\$ 231,708
Retirement of treasury shares	\$ -	\$ 48,875

See Notes to these Consolidated Financial Statements

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 1 – Business Organization and Nature of Operations

BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. has one wholly-owned subsidiary, Stem Pearls, LLC (“Stem Pearls”). Stem Cell Cayman Ltd. (“Cayman”), which was formed in the Cayman Islands as a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, was dissolved in March 2017. BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and its subsidiary are referred to collectively as “BRT” or the “Company” (See Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Principles of Consolidation). BRT develops therapeutic products and medical therapies using cell and tissue protocols, primarily involving adult stem cells. BRT’s website is at [www.biorestorative.com](http://www.biorestorative.com). BRT is currently developing a Disc/Spine Program referred to as “brtxDISC”. Its lead cell therapy candidate, *BRTX-100*, is a product formulated from autologous (or a person’s own) cultured mesenchymal stem cells collected from the patient’s bone marrow. The product is intended to be used for the non-surgical treatment of protruding and bulging lumbar discs in patients suffering from chronic lumbar disc disease. BRT is also engaging in research efforts with respect to a platform technology utilizing brown adipose (fat) for therapeutic purposes to treat type 2 diabetes, obesity and other metabolic disorders and has labeled this initiative its ThermoStem Program. Through the program, BRT is developing a cell-based therapy to target type 2 diabetes, obesity and other metabolic disorders using brown adipose (fat) derived stem cells to generate brown adipose tissue (“BAT”). BAT is intended to mimic naturally occurring brown adipose depots that regulate metabolic homeostasis in humans. Further, BRT has licensed a patented curved needle device that is a needle system designed to deliver cells and/or other therapeutic products or material to the spine and discs.

#### Note 2 – Going Concern and Management’s Plans

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had a working capital deficiency and a stockholders’ deficiency of \$7,833,592 and \$6,836,568, respectively. During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company incurred net losses of \$9,444,655 and \$8,636,292, respectively. These conditions indicate that there is substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the financial statement issuance date.

The Company’s primary source of operating funds since inception has been equity and debt financings. The Company intends to continue to raise additional capital through debt and equity financings. There is no assurance that these funds will be sufficient to enable the Company to fully complete its development activities or attain profitable operations. If the Company is unable to obtain such additional financing on a timely basis or, notwithstanding any request the Company may make, the Company’s debt holders do not agree to convert their notes into equity or extend the maturity dates of their notes, the Company may have to curtail its development, marketing and promotional activities, which would have a material adverse effect on the Company’s business, financial condition and results of operations, and ultimately the Company could be forced to discontinue its operations and liquidate.

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”), which contemplate continuation of the Company as a going concern and the realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the normal course of business. The carrying amounts of assets and liabilities presented in the financial statements do not necessarily purport to represent realizable or settlement values. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustment that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company has received aggregate equity financings (representing proceeds received from the exercise of common stock purchase warrants) and debt financings of \$452,168 and \$420,500, respectively, debt (inclusive of accrued interest) of \$207,993 has been converted into or exchanged for common stock, \$119,583 of debt has been repaid, and the due date for the repayment of \$788,982 of debt has been extended to dates between March 2018 and August 2018. As a result, the Company expects to have the cash required to fund its operations through April 2018 while we continue to apply efforts to raise additional capital. While there can be no assurance that it will be successful, the Company is in negotiations to raise additional capital. As of the filing date of this report, the Company has notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$598,500 which are past due. The Company is currently in the process of negotiating extensions or discussing conversions to equity with respect to these notes. However, there can be no assurance that the Company will be successful in extending or converting these notes. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for additional details.

# BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

## Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

### Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

#### Principles of Consolidation

The consolidated financial statements of the Company include the accounts of Cayman and Stem Pearls. All significant intercompany transactions have been eliminated in the consolidation. As discussed above, Cayman, which had no material assets, liabilities or operations (other than intercompany balances) and is no longer needed to facilitate certain financings, was dissolved in March 2017.

#### Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent liabilities at the dates of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the periods. The Company's significant estimates and assumptions include the recoverability and useful lives of long-lived assets, the fair value of the Company's stock, stock-based compensation, warrants issued in connection with notes payable, derivative liabilities and the valuation allowance related to the Company's deferred tax assets. Certain of the Company's estimates, including the carrying amount of the intangible assets, could be affected by external conditions, including those unique to the Company and general economic conditions. It is reasonably possible that these external factors could have an effect on the Company's estimates and could cause actual results to differ from those estimates.

#### Concentrations

One license and the related royalties comprised all of the Company's revenue during the year ended December 31, 2017, and substantially all of the Company's revenue during the year ended December 31, 2016. See "Revenue Recognition" below.

#### Cash

The Company maintains cash in bank accounts, which, at times, may exceed Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insured limits. The Company has not experienced any losses in such accounts, periodically evaluates the creditworthiness of the financial institutions and has determined the credit exposure to be negligible. As of December 31, 2017, the Company had cash balances in excess of FDIC insured limits of \$205,302. The Company considers all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016 the Company did not have any cash equivalents.

#### Deferred Offering Costs

Deferred offering costs, which primarily consist of direct, incremental professional fees incurred in connection with a financing, are capitalized as non-current assets on the balance sheet. Upon consummation of a financing, the deferred offering costs would be offset against the offering proceeds. If the completion of a contemplated financing was no longer probable, the related deferred offering costs would be charged to general and administrative expense in the consolidated financial statements.

#### Property and Equipment, net

Property and equipment are stated at cost, net of accumulated depreciation which is recorded commencing at the in-service date using the straight-line method at rates sufficient to charge the cost of depreciable assets to operations over their estimated useful lives, which range from 3 to 5 years. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the lesser of (a) the useful life of the asset; or (b) the remaining lease term. Maintenance and repairs are charged to operations as incurred. The Company capitalizes cost attributable to the betterment of property and equipment when such betterment extends the useful life of the assets.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Continued

##### Intangible Assets

Intangible assets are comprised of trademarks and licenses with original estimated useful lives of 10 and 17.7 years, respectively. Once placed into service, the Company amortizes the cost of the intangible assets over their estimated useful lives on a straight-line basis.

##### Impairment of Long-lived Assets

The Company reviews for the impairment of long-lived assets whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. An impairment loss would be recognized when estimated future cash flows expected to result from the use of the asset and its eventual disposition are less than its carrying amount. While the Company's near-term liquidity is tight, historically the Company has been successful in raising capital as needed (although there can be no assurance that the Company will continue to be successful in raising capital as needed). The Company continues to progress its scientific agenda and meet related milestones. The Company has not identified any impairment losses.

##### Revenue Recognition

The Company's policy is to recognize product sales when the risk of loss and title to the product transfers to the customer, after estimating potential returns. During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recognized revenue related to sales of Stem Pearls skincare products of \$0 and \$355, respectively.

The Company recognizes sublicensing and royalty revenue when all of the following have occurred: (i) persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, (ii) the service is completed without further obligation, (iii) the sales price to the customer is fixed or determinable, and (iv) collectability is reasonably assured. In November 2015, the Company and a stem cell treatment company ("SCTC") entered into an amendment to a January 27, 2012 license agreement between them. Pursuant to the amendment, effective November 30, 2015, the Company granted to the SCTC a non-exclusive sublicense to use, and the right to sublicense to third parties the right to use, in certain locations in the United States, certain intellectual property related to stem cell disc procedures (that originally was licensed to the Company by the SCTC pursuant to the January 27, 2012 license agreement). In consideration of the sublicense, the SCTC has agreed to pay the Company royalties on a per disc procedure basis. During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recognized \$81,000 and \$36,000, respectively, of revenue related to the Company's sublicense agreement.

##### Income Taxes

The Company recognizes deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of items that have been included or excluded in the financial statements or tax returns. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined on the basis of the difference between the tax basis of assets and liabilities and their respective financial reporting amounts ("temporary differences") at enacted tax rates in effect for the years in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse.

The Company utilizes a recognition threshold and measurement process for financial statement recognition and measurement of a tax position taken or expected to be taken in a tax return.

Management has evaluated and concluded that there were no material uncertain tax positions requiring recognition in the Company's consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. The Company does not expect any significant changes in its unrecognized tax benefits within twelve months of the reporting date.

The Company's policy is to classify assessments, if any, for tax related interest as interest expense and penalties as general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

# BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

## Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

### Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Continued

#### Net Loss Per Common Share

Basic loss per common share is computed by dividing net loss by the weighted average number of vested common shares outstanding during the period. Diluted earnings per share reflects the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other instruments to issue common stock were exercised or converted into common stock.

The following securities are excluded from the calculation of weighted average dilutive common shares because their inclusion would have been anti-dilutive:

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Options	3,122,202	2,168,950
Warrants	3,435,134	2,953,651
Convertible notes	1,411,762	211,162
Total potentially dilutive shares	7,969,098	5,333,763

#### Stock-Based Compensation

The Company measures the cost of services received in exchange for an award of equity instruments based on the fair value of the award. For employees, the fair value of the award is measured on the grant date and for non-employees, the fair value of the award is generally re-measured on vesting dates and interim financial reporting dates until the service period is complete. The fair value amount is then recognized over the period during which services are required to be provided in exchange for the award, usually the vesting period. Since the shares underlying the Company's 2010 Equity Participation Plan (the "Plan") are registered, the Company estimates the fair value of the awards granted under the Plan based on the market value of its freely tradable common stock as reported on the OTCQB market. The fair value of the Company's restricted equity instruments was estimated by management based on observations of the cash sales prices of both restricted shares and freely tradable shares. Awards granted to directors are treated on the same basis as awards granted to employees. Upon the exercise of an option or warrant, the Company issues new shares of common stock out of its authorized shares.

#### Advertising

Advertising costs are charged to operations as incurred. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company incurred advertising costs of \$26,840 and \$17,972, respectively. Advertising expense is reflected in marketing and promotion expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

#### Research and Development

Research and development expenses are charged to operations as incurred. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company incurred research and development expenses of \$2,152,433 and \$2,883,563, respectively.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Continued

##### Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company measures the fair value of financial assets and liabilities based on the guidance of ASC 820 “Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures” (“ASC 820”).

ASC 820 defines fair value as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. ASC 820 also establishes a fair value hierarchy, which requires an entity to maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs when measuring fair value. ASC 820 describes three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value:

Level 1 — quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities

Level 2 — quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets or inputs that are observable

Level 3 — inputs that are unobservable (for example, cash flow modeling inputs based on assumptions)

The carrying amounts of accrued liabilities approximate fair value due to the short-term nature of these instruments. The carrying amounts of our short-term credit obligations approximate fair value because the effective yields on these obligations, which include contractual interest rates, taken together with other features such as concurrent issuance of warrants, are comparable to rates of returns for instruments of similar credit risk.

See Note 11 – Derivative Liabilities for additional details regarding the valuation technique and assumptions used in valuing Level 3 inputs.

##### Convertible Instruments

The Company bifurcates conversion options from their host instruments and accounts for them as free standing derivative financial instruments according to certain criteria. The criteria include circumstances in which (a) the economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative instrument are not clearly and closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract, (b) the hybrid instrument that embodies both the embedded derivative instrument and the host contract is not re-measured at fair value under otherwise applicable generally accepted accounting principles with changes in fair value reported in earnings as they occur and (c) a separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative instrument would be considered a derivative instrument. An exception to this rule is when the host instrument is deemed to be conventional.

When the Company has determined that the embedded conversion options should not be bifurcated from their host instruments, the Company records, when necessary, discounts to convertible notes for the intrinsic value of conversion options embedded in debt instruments (the beneficial conversion feature) based upon the differences between the fair value of the underlying common stock at the commitment date of the note transaction and the effective conversion price embedded in the note. Debt discounts under these arrangements are amortized over the term of the related debt to their stated date of redemption.

##### Reclassification

Certain amounts in prior periods have been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on previously reported net loss.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Continued

##### Subsequent Events

The Company evaluates events that have occurred after the balance sheet date but before the financial statements are issued. Based upon the evaluation, the Company did not identify any recognized or non-recognized subsequent events that would have required adjustment or disclosure in the consolidated financial statements, except as disclosed.

##### Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

In May 2014, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”) No. 2014-09, “Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606),” (“ASU 2014-09”). ASU 2014-09 supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in ASC 605 - Revenue Recognition (“ASC 605”) and most industry-specific guidance throughout ASC 605. The FASB has issued numerous updates that provide clarification on a number of specific issues as well as requiring additional disclosures. The core principle of ASC 606 requires that an entity recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the company expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. ASC 606 defines a five-step process to achieve this core principle and, in doing so, it is possible more judgment and estimates may be required within the revenue recognition process than required under existing U.S. GAAP including identifying performance obligations in the contract, estimating the amount of variable consideration to include in the transaction price and allocating the transaction price to each separate performance obligation. The guidance also requires enhanced disclosures regarding the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from an entity’s contracts with customers. The guidance may be adopted through either retrospective application to all periods presented in the financial statements (full retrospective approach) or through a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings at the effective date (modified retrospective approach). The guidance was revised in July 2015 to be effective for emerging growth companies for annual and interim periods beginning on or after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating ASU 2014-09 and its impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, “Leases (Topic 842)” (“ASU 2016-02”). ASU 2016-02 requires an entity to recognize assets and liabilities arising from a lease for both financing and operating leases. ASU 2016-02 will also require new qualitative and quantitative disclosures to help investors and other financial statement users better understand the amount, timing, and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. ASU 2016-02 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, with early adoption permitted. The Company is currently evaluating ASU 2016-02 and its impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, “Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718)” (“ASU 2016-09”). ASU 2016-09 requires an entity to simplify several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-09 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, with early adoption permitted. The Company adopted this guidance on January 1, 2017. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company’s financial statement disclosures.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-15, “Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230) Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments” (“ASU 2016-15”). The new standard will make eight targeted changes to how cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the statement of cash flows. The new standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company will require adoption on a retrospective basis unless it is impracticable to apply, in which case the Company would be required to apply the amendments prospectively as of the earliest date practicable. The Company is currently evaluating ASU 2016-15 and its impact on its consolidated financial statements or disclosures.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies – Continued**

Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements - Continued

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-09, “Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718)” (“ASU 2017-09”). ASU 2017-09 provides clarity on the accounting for modifications of stock-based awards. ASU 2017-09 requires adoption on a prospective basis in the annual and interim periods for the Company’s fiscal year ending December 31, 2017 for share-based payment awards modified on or after the adoption date. The Company is currently evaluating the effect that adopting this new accounting guidance will have on its consolidated cash flows and related disclosures.

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-11, “Earnings Per Share (Topic 260); Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480); Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)”: (Part I) Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments with Down Round Features, (Part II) Replacement of the Indefinite Deferral for Mandatorily Redeemable Financial Instruments of Certain Nonpublic Entities and Certain Mandatorily Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests with a Scope Exception (“ASU 2017-11”). ASU 2017-11 allows companies to exclude a down round feature when determining whether a financial instrument (or embedded conversion feature) is considered indexed to the entity’s own stock. As a result, financial instruments (or embedded conversion features) with down round features may no longer be required to be accounted for as derivative liabilities. A company will recognize the value of a down round feature only when it is triggered and the strike price has been adjusted downward. For equity-classified freestanding financial instruments, an entity will treat the value of the effect of the down round as a dividend and a reduction of income available to common shareholders in computing basic earnings per share. For convertible instruments with embedded conversion features containing down round provisions, entities will recognize the value of the down round as a beneficial conversion discount to be amortized to earnings. ASU 2017-11 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. The guidance in ASU 2017-11 can be applied using a full or modified retrospective approach. The Company is currently evaluating the effect that adopting this new accounting guidance will have on its consolidated cash flows and related disclosures.

**Note 4 – Property and Equipment, net**

Property and equipment include the following:

	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Office equipment	\$ 2,848	\$ 2,848
Medical equipment	446,506	446,506
Furniture and fixtures	121,625	121,625
Computer software and equipment	78,190	74,572
Leasehold improvements	304,661	304,661
	953,830	950,212
Less: accumulated depreciation	(625,983)	(441,618)
Property and equipment, net	\$ 327,847	\$ 508,594

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, depreciation expense amounted to \$184,365 and \$183,529, respectively. Depreciation expense is reflected in general and administrative expenses and research and development expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.



**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 5 – Intangible Assets, net**

The Company is a party to a license agreement with the SCTC (as amended) (the “SCTC Agreement”). Pursuant to the SCTC Agreement, the Company obtained, among other things, a worldwide, exclusive, royalty-bearing license from the SCTC to utilize or sublicense a certain medical device patent for the administration of specific cells and/or cell products to the disc and/or spine (and other parts of the body) and a worldwide (excluding Asia and Argentina), exclusive, royalty-bearing license to utilize or sublicense a certain method for culturing cells. Pursuant to the license agreement with SCTC, unless certain performance milestones had been or are satisfied, the Company would have been required to pay to SCTC \$150,000 by April 2017 and will be required to pay to the SCTC an additional \$250,000 by April 2019 in order to maintain its exclusive rights with regard to the disc/spine technology. In February 2017, the Company received authorization from the Food and Drug Administration (the “FDA”) to proceed with a Phase 2 clinical trial. Based upon such authorization, the Company believes that it satisfied a performance milestone such that the Company was not required to pay to the SCTC a minimum amount of \$150,000 by April 2017 to retain exclusive rights with regard to the disc/spine technology. In addition, the Company believes that it has until February 2022 to complete the Phase 2 clinical trial in order to satisfy the final performance milestone such that the Company would not be required to pay the additional \$250,000 by April 2019 pursuant to the SCTC Agreement to maintain its exclusive rights.

Intangible assets consist of the following:

	<b>Patents and Trademarks</b>	<b>Licenses</b>	<b>Accumulated Amortization</b>	<b>Total</b>
Balance as of January 1, 2016	\$ 3,676	\$ 1,301,500	\$ (266,435)	\$ 1,038,741
Amortization expense	-	-	(74,896)	(74,896)
Balance as of December 31, 2016	<u>3,676</u>	<u>1,301,500</u>	<u>(341,331)</u>	<u>963,845</u>
Amortization expense	-	-	(74,895)	(74,895)
Balance as of December 31, 2017	<u>\$ 3,676</u>	<u>\$ 1,301,500</u>	<u>\$ (416,226)</u>	<u>\$ 888,950</u>
Weighted average remaining amortization period at December 31, 2017 (in years)	<u>3.0</u>	<u>11.9</u>		

Amortization of intangible assets consists of the following:

	<b>Patents and Trademarks</b>	<b>Licenses</b>	<b>Accumulated Amortization</b>
Balance as of January 1, 2016	\$ 1,840	\$ 264,595	\$ 266,435
Amortization expense	368	74,528	74,896
Balance as of December 31, 2016	<u>2,208</u>	<u>339,123</u>	<u>341,331</u>
Amortization expense	368	74,527	74,895
Balance as of December 31, 2017	<u>\$ 2,576</u>	<u>\$ 413,650</u>	<u>\$ 416,226</u>

Amortization expense is reflected in general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations. Based upon the current intangible assets as of December 31, 2017, amortization expense is projected to be approximately \$75,000 per annum through 2029.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 6 – Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities**

Accrued expenses and other current liabilities are comprised of the following:

	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Credit card payable	\$ 1,010	\$ 1,778
Accrued payroll	349,163	747,793
Accrued research and development expenses	636,175	581,175
Accrued general and administrative expenses	604,308	263,468
Accrued director compensation	282,500	357,500
Deferred rent	50,395	52,945
Total accrued expenses	<u>1,923,551</u>	<u>2,004,659</u>
Less: accrued expenses, current portion	<u>1,885,551</u>	<u>1,574,659</u>
Accrued expenses, non-current portion	<u>\$ 38,000</u>	<u>\$ 430,000</u>

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company received non-interest bearing advances in the amount of \$43,515 from an officer and a family member of an officer of the Company and repaid an aggregate of \$58,515, of which \$15,000 was in accounts payable at December 31, 2016, of non-interest bearing advances from a director, an officer and a family member of an officer of the Company. During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company received an aggregate of \$292,090 in non-interest bearing advances from an officer, directors and a consultant of the Company and made aggregate repayments of \$364,120.

Effective March 1, 2017, the Company entered into an exchange agreement with the Chairman of the Company's Scientific Advisory Board, pursuant to which an aggregate of \$175,000 of accrued consulting fees were exchanged for 58,334 shares of common stock of the Company and, in consideration thereof, the Company issued to such person an immediately vested five-year warrant for the purchase of 58,334 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The common stock and warrants had an aggregate grant date value of \$211,752 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on settlement of payables of \$36,752 which is reflected within general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

Effective March 1, 2017, the Company entered into exchange agreements with four non-employee directors of the Company, pursuant to which an aggregate of \$265,000 of accrued director fees were exchanged for an aggregate of 88,334 shares of common stock of the Company and, in consideration thereof, the Company issued to the directors immediately vested five-year warrants for the purchase of an aggregate of 88,334 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate value of the shares and warrants was \$320,652, and accordingly the Company recorded a loss on settlement of payables of \$55,652 which is reflected within general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

Effective July 18, 2017, the Company entered into an exchange agreement with a certain vendor of the Company, pursuant to which \$17,697 of accounts payable were exchanged for 8,334 shares of common stock of the Company. In consideration thereof, the Company issued to the vendor immediately vested five-year warrants for the purchase of 2,000 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate value of the shares and warrants was \$19,888, and accordingly the Company recorded a loss on settlement of payables of \$2,191 which is reflected within general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

See Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies – Consulting Agreements for details regarding an additional exchange of accrued consulting fees for shares of common stock and warrants.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company reclassified accrued expenses in the aggregate amount of \$38,000 to accrued expenses, non-current portion, on the consolidated balance sheets related to accrued consulting fees that were exchanged for shares of common stock and warrants subsequent to December 31, 2017. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for additional details regarding the exchange of accrued consulting fees.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 7 – Notes Payable**

A summary of the notes payable activity during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 is presented below:

	<b>Related Party Notes</b>	<b>Convertible Notes</b>	<b>Other Notes</b>	<b>Debt Discount</b>	<b>Total</b>
Outstanding, January 1, 2016	\$ 150,000	\$ 420,000	\$ 900,083	\$ (158,285)	\$ 1,311,798
Issuances	697,500	530,000	724,500	-	1,952,000
Exchanges for equity	-	(235,000)	(49,018)	-	(284,018)
Conversions to equity	-	(325,000)	-	-	(325,000)
Repayments	(150,000)	-	(326,500)	-	(476,500)
Recognition of debt discount	-	-	-	(604,067)	(604,067)
Accretion of interest expense	-	-	-	40,052	40,052
Amortization of debt discount	-	-	-	542,336	542,336
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	\$ 697,500	\$ 390,000[1]	\$ 1,249,065	\$ (179,964)	\$ 2,156,601
Issuances	175,000	1,612,333	1,033,900	-	2,821,233
Indebtedness satisfied via settlement	-	637,250[2]	(637,250)	-	-
Exchanges for equity	(97,500)	(50,000)	(203,750)	-	(351,250)
Conversions to equity	-	(495,197)	-	-	(495,197)
Repayments	(60,000)	(69,176)	(201,000)	-	(330,176)
Recognition of debt discount	-	-	-	(964,911)	(964,911)
Accretion of interest expense	-	4,660	13,500	188,124	206,284
Amortization of debt discount	-	-	-	619,266	619,266
Outstanding, December 31, 2017	\$ 715,000	\$ 2,029,870[1]	\$ 1,254,465	\$ (337,485)	\$ 3,661,850
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	\$ 697,500	\$ 390,000	\$ 1,249,065	\$ (179,964)	\$ 2,156,601
Less: current portion, December 31, 2016	(430,000)	(345,000)	(1,236,565)	152,720	(1,858,845)
Non-current portion, December 31, 2016 [3]	\$ 267,500	\$ 45,000	\$ 12,500	\$ (27,244)	\$ 297,756
Outstanding, December 31, 2017	\$ 715,000	\$ 2,029,870	\$ 1,254,465	\$ (337,485)	\$ 3,661,850
Less: current portion, December 31, 2017	(715,000)	(1,834,332)	(1,254,465)	336,229	(3,467,568)
Non-current portion, December 31, 2017 [3]	\$ -	\$ 195,538	\$ -	\$ (1,256)	\$ 194,282

[1] As of December 31, 2017, a designated portion of convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$1,777,788 was convertible into shares of common stock at the election of the holder any time immediately until the balance has been paid in full. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, a designated portion of convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$252,082 and \$390,000, respectively, was convertible into shares of common stock at the election of the Company near maturity. In the event the Company exercised or exercises that conversion right on a designated portion of such principal balance, the holder had or has the right to accelerate the conversion of up to \$196,666 and \$296,250 of principal into shares of common stock at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, at the same conversion price.

[2] In connection with certain note extensions during the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a certain lender agreed to add embedded conversion options, permitting principal and the respective accrued interest to be convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the lender any time until the balance has been paid in full. See Note 7 – Notes Payable – Convertible Notes and Note 11 – Derivative Liabilities for additional details regarding the embedded conversion options.

[3] As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company reclassified principal in the aggregate amount of \$194,282 and \$297,756, respectively (net of debt discount of \$1,256 and \$27,244, respectively), and accrued interest in the aggregate amount of \$9,591 and \$7,681, respectively, to notes payable, non-current portion, net of debt discount and accrued interest, non-current portion, respectively, on the consolidated balance sheets related to outstanding notes payable that were converted into or exchanged for shares of common stock and warrants subsequent to December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for additional details regarding notes payable.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued

##### Related Party Notes

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, related party notes consisted of notes payable issued to certain directors of the Company and the Tuxis Trust (the “Trust”). A director and principal shareholder of the Company (the “Director/Principal Shareholder”) serves as a trustee of Trust, which was established for the benefit of his immediate family.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company borrowed \$500,000 from the Trust. The promissory note evidencing the loan provided for the payment of the principal amount, together with interest at the rate of 10% per annum, on July 1, 2017. In July 2017, the interest rate payable on the note was increased to 15% per annum and the maturity date was extended to December 2017. In November 2017, the maturity date of the note was further extended to December 1, 2018 as described below. In the event that, prior to maturity, the Company receives net proceeds of \$10,000,000 from a single equity or debt financing (as opposed to a series of related or unrelated financings), the Trust has the right to require that the Company prepay the amount due under the note (subject to the consent of the party that provided the particular financing) (a “Financing Acceleration”). In consideration of the loan, the Company issued to the Trust a five-year, immediately vested warrant for the purchase of 40,000 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The \$55,659 relative fair value of the warrant has been recorded as debt discount and will be amortized over the term of the note.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$197,500 for aggregate cash consideration of \$190,000 to directors of the Company. The notes mature on dates ranging from January 31, 2017 to February 5, 2017 and range from bearing no interest to 10% interest per annum, payable monthly. The \$7,500 difference between the principal amount of the notes and the cash received was recorded as debt discount and is being amortized to interest expense over the term of notes. In connection with the note issuances, the Company (i) issued one of the directors a five-year, immediately vested warrant to purchase 8,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share and (ii) extended outstanding warrants held by a director to purchase an aggregate of 844,444 shares of common stock with exercise prices ranging from \$4.50 to \$5.00 per share from expiration dates ranging from November 2017 to March 2018 to a new expiration date of December 31, 2018. The \$11,959 relative fair value of the issued warrant and the \$55,028 relative fair value of the warrant modifications have been recorded as debt discount and are being amortized over the term of their respective notes.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued to the Director/Principal Shareholder a note in the principal amount of \$175,000, which bears interest at a rate of 15% per annum payable and provided for a maturity date of December 1, 2017. In November 2017, the maturity date of the note was extended to December 1, 2018 as described below (subject to a Financing Acceleration). The note is secured by the grant of a security interest in the Company’s equipment and intellectual property. In connection with the borrowing, the Company agreed that the payment of the Tuxis note is also secured by such security interest.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company, the Trust and the Director/Principal Shareholder agreed to extend the maturity dates of the above notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$675,000, that were near maturity, to December 1, 2018 (subject to a Financing Acceleration). In consideration of the note extensions, the Company reduced the exercise prices for an aggregate of 1,219,444 previously issued five-year warrants to purchase the Company’s common stock at prices ranging from \$4.50 to \$5.00 per share to a reduced exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The incremental modification expense of \$84,722 has been recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the extended term of the notes.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued

##### Related Party Notes - Continued

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a director of the Company agreed to extend the maturity date of a note payable with a principal balance of \$50,000 from February 2017 to February 2018. In connection with the extension, the Company issued the director a five-year, immediately vested warrant to purchase 5,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The grant date fair value of the warrant of \$8,050 was recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the remaining term of the note.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and certain related party lenders agreed to exchange certain related party notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$97,500 and aggregate accrued interest of \$288 into an aggregate of 32,597 shares of common stock and immediately vested five-year warrants to purchase an aggregate of 32,597 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The common stock and warrants had an aggregate exchange date value of \$118,328 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on extinguishment of notes payable of \$20,540.

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company repaid an aggregate principal amount of \$60,000 and \$150,000, respectively, of related party notes.

##### Convertible Notes

###### *Issuances*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$530,000, which provided for maturity dates ranging from September 2016 to August 2017 and interest at the rate of 10% per annum payable at maturity. The convertible notes were convertible into shares of the Company's stock at the election of the Company during the five days prior to maturity and ending on the day immediately prior to maturity at a conversion price equal to the greater of (a) a range of 60% to 62% of the fair value of the Company's common stock or (b) \$0.75, \$1.00, or \$2.00 per share depending on the note. With respect to \$296,250 principal amount of the issued notes, in the event that the Company elected to convert a portion of the principal outstanding under the notes into common stock, the holder would have the right to convert up to the remaining principal into shares of common stock at the conversion price. In connection with the issuance of convertible notes, the Company issued five-year, immediately vested warrants to purchase an aggregate of 33,750 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate relative fair value of the \$53,150 has been recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the term of the convertible notes.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued lenders convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$350,000, which bear interest at a rate of 10% per annum payable at maturity. The convertible notes provided for original maturity dates between November 2017 and February 2018. The notes also provided that each payment of principal and the respective accrued interest would be convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the Company during the period beginning five days prior to maturity and ending on the day immediately prior to maturity at a conversion price equal to between 50% to 60% of the fair market value of the Company's stock, depending on the particular convertible note; however, in no event could the conversion price be less than a price between \$0.75 to \$1.00 per share, depending on the particular convertible note. Should the Company elect to convert any of the note principal and respective accrued interest, the holder would have the right to accelerate the conversion of the remaining outstanding principal and accrued interest of the note at the same conversion price. The Company will recognize the beneficial conversion feature of the notes as debt discount at the time the contingently adjustable conversion ratio is resolved. In connection with the issuance of these convertible notes, the Company issued a certain lender 8,000 shares of common stock and a certain other lender a five-year warrant to purchase 7,500 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate relative fair value of the common stock and warrants of \$24,388 was recorded as an original issue discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective notes.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued

##### Convertible Notes - Continued

###### *Issuances - Continued*

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued lenders convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1,204,000, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,065,970. The difference of \$138,030 was recorded as an original issue discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective notes. The convertible notes bear interest at rates ranging between 6% to 10% per annum payable at maturity with maturity dates ranging between May 2018 through July 2018. Principal and the respective accrued interest is convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the holder at any time immediately on or after the issue date until the balance has been paid in full. The conversion price of certain notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$905,000 is \$2.75 per share, subject to adjustment under certain circumstances. With respect to the other notes, the conversion price shall be equal to 65% of the fair market value of the Company's stock; however, generally the conversion price shall not be less than \$1.00 per share. Additionally, in connection with the issuance of certain convertible notes, the Company issued certain lenders five-year warrants to purchase an aggregate 54,519 shares of the Company's common stock at an exercise price of \$4.15 per share, subject to a mandatory redemption provision. The aggregate relative fair value of the warrants was \$80,014, which was recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective convertible notes. See Note 11 – Derivative Liabilities for details regarding the mandatory redemption provision. In connection with certain convertible notes, the Company incurred \$13,750 of debt issuance costs.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued a lender a note payable in the principal amount of \$83,333 of which \$25,000 of principal bears no interest and \$58,333 of principal bears interest at 10% per annum and is convertible into common stock. In connection with the issuance of the note, the Company received gross proceeds of \$75,000, and the difference of \$8,333 has been recorded as an original issue discount and will be amortized over the term of the note. The note provided for payment as follows: (i) \$25,000 of principal, which bore no interest and was not convertible into common stock, was payable three weeks from the issuance date, (ii) \$11,667 of principal and the respective interest on such principal was payable six months from the issuance date (the "First Maturity Date"), (iii) \$11,667 of principal and the respective interest on such principal was payable two weeks following the First Maturity Date, (iv) \$11,667 of principal and the respective accrued interest on such principal was payable four weeks following the First Maturity Date, (v) \$11,667 of principal and the respective interest on such principal was payable six weeks following the First Maturity Date, and (vi) \$11,667 of principal and the respective interest on such principal was payable eight weeks following the First Maturity Date. Excluding the \$25,000 of principal that was not convertible into common stock as described above, each payment of principal and the respective accrued interest was convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the Company during the period beginning five days prior to maturity and ending on the day immediately prior to maturity at a conversion price equal to 50% of the fair market value of the Company's stock; however, in no event could the conversion price be less than \$0.75 per share. Should the Company elect to convert any of the note principal and respective accrued interest, the holder would have the right to accelerate the conversion of the remaining outstanding principal and accrued interest of the note at the same conversion price. The Company will recognize the beneficial conversion feature of the note as debt discount at the time the contingently adjustable conversion ratio is resolved. In connection with the issuance of this note, the Company issued the lender 3,500 shares of common stock with a relative fair value of \$6,458 which was recorded as an original issue discount and is being amortized over the term of the note.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued

##### Convertible Notes - Continued

###### *Conversions, Exchanges and Other*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company elected to convert certain convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$325,000 and aggregate accrued interest of \$16,751 into an aggregate of 137,006 shares of common stock at conversion prices ranging from \$1.94 to \$3.00 per share.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company and certain lenders agreed to exchange certain convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$235,000, along with accrued and unpaid interest of \$9,788, for an aggregate of 143,102 shares of common stock at prices ranging from \$1.50 to \$2.10 per share. The common stock had an aggregate issuance date value of \$298,762 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on extinguishment of \$53,974.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a certain lender agreed to exchange a certain convertible note with a principal balance of \$50,000 and accrued interest of \$2,712 into 29,280 shares of common stock. The common stock had an exchange date value of \$58,560 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on extinguishment of notes payable of \$5,848.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a certain lender elected to convert certain convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$495,197 and aggregate accrued interest of \$29,338 into an aggregate of 243,441 shares of common stock at conversion prices ranging from \$1.75 to \$2.77 per share.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a lender agreed to multiple extensions of the maturity dates of notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$637,250 with maturity dates that were near or at maturity to maturity dates ranging from December 1, 2017 through February 10, 2018. In connection with one of the note extensions, the Company issued the lender 2,500 shares of common stock. The issuance date fair value of the common stock of \$5,000 has been recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized over the term of the note. Additionally, in connection with one of the extensions, the Company incurred an extension fee in the amount \$8,500 which was accreted as interest expense and added to the principal balance of the note. Also, in connection with the note extensions, the Company increased the effective rate at which the notes bear interest from 0% to 8% on dates effective between August 2, 2017 and September 7, 2017. Furthermore, in connection with certain extensions, the Company and the lender agreed to add an aggregate \$4,660 of incurred interest to the principal of the respective notes. Also, in connection with the note extensions, the Company added embedded conversion options, pursuant to which each payment of principal and the respective accrued interest is convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the lender at any time until the balance has been paid in full at a conversion price equal to 80% of the fair market value of the Company's stock (subject to reduction to 70% under certain circumstances); however, generally the conversion price shall not be less than \$1.00 per share. The embedded conversion options of the notes were determined to be derivative liabilities. The aggregate issuance date value of the embedded conversion options was \$252,117, which was recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective convertible notes. See Note 11 – Derivative Liabilities for additional details.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company repaid an aggregate principal amount of \$69,176 of convertible notes.

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the contingently adjustable conversion ratio associated with certain convertible notes was resolved and such notes became convertible during the period. The Company estimated the intrinsic value of the embedded conversion option based upon the difference between the fair value of the underlying common stock at the commitment date of the note transaction and the effective conversion price embedded in the convertible note. During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recognized \$11,191 and \$231,708, respectively, related to the beneficial conversion feature as debt discount which was immediately amortized.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued

##### Other Notes

###### *Issuances*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued other notes payable with an aggregate principal amount of \$724,500 for aggregate cash consideration of \$674,000. The notes issued had maturity dates ranging from September 2016 to April 2017 and interest rates ranging from bearing no interest to 10% per annum, payable at maturity, and the \$58,000 difference between the principal amount of the notes and the cash received was recorded as debt discount and is being amortized to interest expense over the terms of the respective notes. In connection with the issuance of the notes, the Company issued five-year, immediately vested warrants to purchase an aggregate of 39,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate \$61,767 relative fair value of the warrants has been recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective notes.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued lenders other notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1,033,900 for aggregate gross proceeds of \$915,000, and the difference of \$118,900 has been recorded as an original issue discount and will be amortized over the terms of the respective notes (inclusive of \$25,000 of principal of a note payable as discussed above in Note 7 – Notes Payable – Convertible Notes). The other notes bear interest at rates between 0% to 12% per annum payable at maturity. The other notes matured or mature between dates in May 2017 to July 2018. In connection with the issuance of these other notes, the Company issued to certain lenders 22,653 shares of common stock and certain other lenders five-year warrants to purchase an aggregate of 55,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate relative fair value of the common stock and warrants of \$116,248 was recorded as an original issue discount and is being amortized over the terms of the respective notes.

###### *Exchanges and Other*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company and certain lenders agreed to exchange certain other notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$49,018 for an aggregate of 23,925 shares of common stock at prices ranging from \$1.25 to \$2.45 per share. The common stock had an aggregate issuance date value of \$53,831 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on extinguishment of \$4,813.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company and a lender agreed to multiple extensions of the maturity date of a non-interest bearing note payable in the original principal amount of \$244,000 from February 5, 2016 to July 15, 2016. In connection with the extensions, the Company (i) paid the lender an aggregate of \$111,000 of which \$96,000 was repayment of the principal balance and \$15,000 was a fee related to the extension which is reflected within interest expense in the consolidated statements of operations, (ii) the lender received 6,000 shares of common stock with a fair value of \$13,500 which was recorded as debt discount and amortized over the term of the extension and (iii) the Company and the lender agreed to exchange principal in the amount of \$10,000 into 8,000 shares of common stock (included within the exchanges discussed above). On July 15, 2016, the Company repaid the \$138,000 outstanding principal balance.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, excluding amounts extended as discussed above, the Company extended notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$567,063 from various maturity dates within October 2015 to new maturity dates ranging from August 2016 to October 2017. In connection with one of the notes extended, the Company issued a five-year, immediately vested warrant to purchase 30,000 shares at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The \$52,800 relative fair value of the warrant has been recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the term of the note. Additionally, outstanding warrants to purchase an aggregate of 60,215 shares of common stock with an exercise price of \$4.00 and expiration dates ranging from June 2017 to December 2020 had their expiration dates extended to October 2021. In connection with the warrant modifications, the Company recognized \$13,120 of deferred debt discount which is being amortized over the term of the extended note.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, excluding amounts repaid as discussed above, the Company repaid an aggregate principal amount of \$92,500 of notes payable.



**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 7 – Notes Payable – Continued**

Other Notes - Continued

*Exchanges and Other - Continued*

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and certain lenders agreed to exchange certain other notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$203,750 and aggregate accrued interest of \$7,114 into an aggregate of 70,205 shares of common stock and immediately vested five-year warrants to purchase an aggregate of 63,205 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. In addition, in consideration of the exchange by certain lenders, the Company agreed to extend the expiration dates of certain warrants held by the lenders for the purchase of an aggregate of 18,000 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share, from expiration dates ranging from April 27, 2021 to January 31, 2022 to a new expiration date of February 8, 2022. The common stock, warrants, and warrant modification (which represents the incremental value of the modified warrant as compared to the original warrant value, both valued as of the modification date) had an aggregate exchange date value of \$244,414 and, as a result, the Company recorded a loss on extinguishment of notes payable of \$33,550.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and certain lenders agreed to extend other notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$984,063, that were near or at maturity, to various dates through October 2018. In consideration of the extensions, the Company issued certain lenders an aggregate 4,300 shares of the Company's common stock. Also, in connection with the extensions, the Company issued certain lenders five-year, immediately vested warrants to purchase an aggregate of 56,118 shares of the Company's common stock at exercise prices ranging between \$4.00 to \$5.00 per share. The aggregate grant date fair value of the common stock and warrants of \$96,910 has been recorded as debt discount and is being amortized over the term of the note. Additionally, in connection with one of the extensions, the Company incurred debt issuance costs in the amount \$5,000 which was accreted as interest expense and added to the principal balance of the note.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company and a lender agreed to extend other notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$637,250 such that the notes also became convertible into shares of the Company's common stock. See Note 7 – Notes Payable – Convertible Notes for additional details.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company repaid an aggregate principal amount of \$201,000 of other notes.

As of December 31, 2017, the holder of a certain other note is entitled to five years of royalty payments associated with cosmetic revenues, as defined in the note, beginning when the Company first earns cosmetic revenues and ranging from 2.0% to 4.0% of cosmetic revenues, depending on the year the cosmetic revenues are earned. Given that the Company has not yet generated any cosmetic revenues, no royalty payments have been earned.

**Note 8 – Income Taxes**

United States and foreign components of loss before income taxes were as follows:

	<b>For The Years Ended</b>	
	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
United States	\$ (9,444,655)	\$ (8,627,380)
Foreign	-	(8,912)
Loss before income taxes	<u>\$ (9,444,655)</u>	<u>\$ (8,636,292)</u>

The tax effects of temporary differences that give rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities are presented below:

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Income Taxes – Continued**

	<b>For The Years Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Deferred Tax Assets:</b>		
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 2,176,000	\$ 3,495,000
Stock-based compensation	2,873,000	2,868,000
Accruals	48,000	237,000
Research & development tax credits	340,000	192,000
Other	1,000	2,000
<b>Gross deferred tax assets</b>	<b>5,438,000</b>	<b>6,794,000</b>
<b>Deferred Tax Liabilities:</b>		
Fixed assets	(34,000)	(97,000)
Intangible assets	(16,000)	(18,000)
<b>Gross deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>(50,000)</b>	<b>(115,000)</b>
<b>Net deferred tax assets</b>	<b>5,388,000</b>	<b>6,679,000</b>
<b>Valuation allowance</b>	<b>(5,388,000)</b>	<b>(6,679,000)</b>
<b>Deferred tax asset, net of valuation allowance</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>Changes in valuation allowance</b>	<b>\$ (1,291,000)</b>	<b>\$ 3,271,520</b>

The income tax provision (benefit) consists of the following:

	<b>For The Years Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Federal:</b>		
Current	\$ -	\$ -
Deferred	1,385,000	(2,927,149)
<b>State and local:</b>		
Current	-	-
Deferred	(94,000)	(344,371)
<b>Change in valuation allowance</b>	<b>1,291,000</b>	<b>(3,271,520)</b>
<b>Income tax provision (benefit)</b>	<b>\$ (1,291,000)</b>	<b>\$ 3,271,520</b>

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Income Taxes – Continued**

A reconciliation of the statutory federal income tax rate to the Company’s effective tax rate is as follows:

	<b>For The Years Ended</b>	
	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Tax benefit at federal statutory rate	(34.0)%	(34.0)%
State income taxes, net of federal benefit	(4.0)%	(4.0)%
Permanent differences	(0.0)%	0.4%
Change in tax rates	24.7%	0.0%
Research & development tax credits	(1.6)%	(0.6)%
Impact of Section 382 limits	28.3%	0.0%
True-ups and other	0.3%	0.3%
Change in valuation allowance	(13.7)%	37.9%
<b>Effective income tax rate</b>	<b>0.0%</b>	<b>0.0%</b>

The Company assesses the likelihood that deferred tax assets will be realized. To the extent that realization is not likely, a valuation allowance is established. Based upon the Company’s history of losses since inception, management believes that it is more likely than not that future benefits of deferred tax assets will not be realized.

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had approximately \$8,400,000 and \$9,200,000, respectively, of federal net operating losses that may be available to offset future taxable income. The usable state net operating losses are not materially different from the federal net operating losses. The net operating loss carry forwards, if not utilized, will expire from 2029 to 2037 for federal purposes. In accordance with Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code, the usage of the Company’s net operating loss carry forwards are subject to annual limitations due to several greater than 50% ownership changes. The Section 382 limitations result in approximately \$28,200,000 of federal NOLs not being realizable as of December 31, 2017 and the cumulative reversal of approximately \$9,600,000 of net operating loss deferred tax assets.

The Company files income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction and the state of New York (also formerly Florida where the Company filed its final return in 2015), which remain subject to examination by the various taxing authorities beginning with the tax year ended December 31, 2014 (or the tax year ended December 31, 2009 if the Company were to utilize its NOLs). No tax audits were commenced or were in process during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the “Act”) was enacted in December 2017 making significant changes to the Internal Revenue Code. Changes include but are not limited to (a) the reduction of the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017; (b) the transition of U.S. international taxation from a worldwide tax system to a territorial system; and (c) a one-time transition tax on the mandatory deemed repatriation of foreign earnings. The latter two changes are not expected to impact the Company as its Cayman subsidiary generated cumulative losses and was dissolved in March 2017. The change in tax law required the Company to remeasure existing net deferred tax assets using the lower rate in the period of enactment resulting in an income tax expense of approximately \$2.3 million which is fully offset by the corresponding tax benefit of \$2.3 million from the reduction in the valuation allowance in the year ended December 31, 2017. There were no specific impacts of the Act that could not be reasonably estimated which the Company accounted for under the prior tax law. However, based on a continued analysis of the estimates and further guidance on the application of the law, it is possible that additional revisions may occur throughout the allowable one-year measurement period, as outlined in Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118.

# BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

## Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

### Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies

#### Operating Lease

The Company is a party to a lease for 6,800 square feet of space located in Melville, New York (the “Melville Lease”) with respect to its corporate and laboratory operations. The Melville Lease expires in March 2020 (subject to extension at the option of the Company for a period of five years) and calls for an annual base rental during the initial term ranging between \$132,600 and \$149,260. The aggregate base rent payable over the lease term will be recognized on a straight-line basis. In connection with the operating lease, the Company paid the landlord a security deposit of \$45,900, of which \$11,724 was applied as rent payments in 2017.

During the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company received a credit of \$21,237 and \$20,912, respectively, towards its rent payments in connection with a tax rebate received by the landlord. The Company’s rent expense amounted to \$115,885 and \$124,038 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Rent expense is reflected in general and administrative expenses and research and development expenses in the consolidated statements of operations.

Future minimum payments under this operating lease agreement is as follows:

For the Years Ending December 31,	Amount
2018	\$ 140,918
2019	148,172
2020	37,315
	<u>\$ 326,405</u>

#### Consulting Agreements

##### *Business Advisory Services*

In June 2016, a previously expired agreement for business advisory services was further amended and the agreement was reinstated effective as of July 1, 2016 and provided for an expiration date of December 31, 2016 (the “New Business Advisory Extended Term”). In consideration of services rendered during the New Business Advisory Extended Term, the Company agreed to pay a cash fee of \$15,000 per month and the Company granted an immediately vested five-year warrant to purchase 10,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$12.00 per share and an immediately vested five-year warrant to purchase 10,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$10.00 per share. The aggregate grant date value of the warrants of \$74,923 was recognized immediately. In March 2017, the New Business Advisory Extended Term expired and was further amended. Pursuant to the amendment, the agreement was reinstated effective as of January 1, 2017 and provides for an expiration date of December 31, 2017. In consideration of the extension of the term of the consulting agreement, the Company issued to the consultant an immediately vested five-year warrant for the purchase of 25,000 shares of common stock of the Company. See Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Stock Warrants for details associated with the issuance of warrants as compensation. Concurrently, the Company entered into an exchange agreement with the consultant pursuant to which \$30,000 of accrued consulting fees were exchanged for 10,000 shares of common stock of the Company and, in consideration thereof, the Company issued to the consultant an immediately vested five-year warrant for the purchase of 10,000 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The aggregate value of shares and warrant was \$36,300, and accordingly the Company recorded a loss on settlement of payables of \$6,300 which is reflected within general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of operations. During each of the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recorded cash consulting fee expense of \$180,000 related to the business advisory agreement.

See Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Warrant and Option Valuation and Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Stock Warrants regarding details for the valuation of warrants and the Black-Scholes valuation assumptions.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies – Continued

##### Litigations, Claims and Assessments

In the normal course of business, the Company may be involved in legal proceedings, claims and assessments arising in the ordinary course of business, and as of December 31, 2017, none are expected to materially impact the Company's financial position.

The Company records legal costs associated with loss contingencies as incurred and accrues for all probable and estimable settlements.

##### Employment Agreements

###### *Chief Executive Officer*

The Company and its Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") are parties to an employment agreement that expires on December 31, 2019. Pursuant to the employment agreement, as amended, in the event that (a) the CEO's employment is terminated by the Company without cause, or (b) the CEO terminates his employment for "good reason" (each as defined in the employment agreement), or (c) the term of the CEO's employment agreement is not extended beyond December 31, 2019 and within three months of such expiration date, his employment is terminated by the Company without "cause" or the CEO terminates his employment for any reason, the CEO would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to his then annual base salary and certain benefits, plus \$100,000 (in lieu of bonus). Further, in the event that the CEO's employment is terminated by the Company without cause, or the CEO terminates his employment for "good reason", following a "change in control" (as defined in the employment agreement), the CEO would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to one and one-half times his then annual base salary and certain benefits, plus \$300,000 (in lieu of bonus). See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for additional details regarding an amendment of the CEO's employment agreement.

###### *Other*

In February 2017 and March 2017, the Company's Compensation Committee and Board of Directors, respectively, approved the following associated with performance-based cash bonuses for certain of the Company's officers and current employees: (i) new performance-based cash bonuses payable for the year ending December 31, 2017 such that an aggregate of up to \$402,500 could be earned for such year pursuant to the satisfaction of such goals; and (ii) the amendment of the performance-based cash bonuses for the year ended December 31, 2016 such that an aggregate of up to \$322,000 could be earned for such year pursuant to the satisfaction of such goals. Also, pursuant to the amendment of the performance-based cash bonuses, the Company's officers and certain employees' achievement date of 2016 milestones was extended from January 31, 2017 to July 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2016, the Company accrued approximately \$191,000 for 2016 bonus milestones which were achieved and approximately \$100,000 for 2016 bonus milestones which were probable to be achieved. As of December 31, 2017, the Company accrued approximately \$87,000 for 2016 bonus milestones which were achieved and \$0 for 2017 bonus milestones since such milestones were deemed not probable to be achieved.

As of December 31, 2017, two employees other than the CEO have "at-will" employment agreements with the Company that provide for aggregate cash severance payments of \$175,000, payable over twelve months, upon involuntary termination.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 10 – Stockholders' Deficiency

##### Authorized Capital

As of December 31, 2017, the Company was authorized to issue 30,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value, and 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.01 par value. The holders of the Company's common stock are entitled to one vote per share. Subject to the rights of holders of preferred stock, if any, the holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably such dividends, if any, as may be declared by the Board of Directors out of legally available funds. Subject to the rights of holders of preferred stock, if any, upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, holders of common stock are entitled to share ratably in all assets of the Company that are legally available for distribution. No preferred stock has been issued through December 31, 2017.

##### 2010 Equity Participation Plan

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Compensation Committee and the Company's stockholders, respectively, approved an increase in the number of shares authorized to be issued pursuant to the Company's 2010 Equity Participation Plan from 2,250,000 to 4,250,000.

##### Compensatory Common Stock Issuances

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued an aggregate of 54,901 shares of immediately vested common stock valued at \$116,958 to consultants pursuant to consulting agreements for services rendered during the year.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued an aggregate of 13,208 shares of common stock valued at \$27,553 in satisfaction of previously accrued consulting services.

See Note 6 – Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities for details regarding exchanges of accrued expenses for shares of common stock and warrants to a consultant and certain directors of the Company. See Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies for details regarding an exchange of accrued consulting fees for shares of common stock and warrants.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued 10,000 shares of immediately vested common stock valued at \$20,000 to a consultant for services rendered during the year.

##### Common Stock and Warrant Offerings

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued an aggregate of 956,833 shares of common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 1,801,177 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$4.00 to \$5.00 per share to investors for aggregate gross proceeds of \$3,498,338. Of the aggregate warrants issued, warrants to purchase 444,444, 400,000 and 956,733 shares of common stock had terms of 0.7, 1.0 and 5.0 years, respectively. The warrants had an aggregate grant date fair value of \$2,054,144.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued an aggregate of 361,335 shares of common stock and five-year immediately vested warrants to purchase an aggregate of 371,335 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 to investors for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,084,000. The warrants had an aggregate grant date fair value of \$601,595.

##### Return of Shares to Treasury

In June 2016, the Company and a consultant agreed that, due to the amount and nature of the services performed, the consultant would return 7,500 shares of common stock to the Company with a fair value of \$16,875. Accordingly, the Company recorded the treasury shares at cost with a stock-based compensation credit which is reflected within consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

##### Retirement of Treasury Shares

In August 2016, the Company's Board of Directors made a determination to retire 35,432 shares of treasury stock.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 10 – Stockholders' Deficiency - Continued

##### Warrant and Option Valuation

The Company has computed the fair value of warrants and options granted using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. Option forfeitures are estimated at the time of valuation and reduce expense ratably over the vesting period. This estimate will be adjusted periodically based on the extent to which actual option forfeitures differ, or are expected to differ, from the previous estimate, when it is material. The Company estimated forfeitures related to option grants at an annual rate ranging from 0% to 5% for options granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. The expected term used for warrants and options issued to non-employees is the contractual life and the expected term used for options issued to employees and directors is the estimated period of time that options granted are expected to be outstanding. The Company utilizes the "simplified" method to develop an estimate of the expected term of "plain vanilla" employee option grants. The Company is utilizing an expected volatility figure based on a review of the historical volatilities, over a period of time, equivalent to the expected life of the instrument being valued, of similarly positioned public companies within its industry. The risk-free interest rate was determined from the implied yields from U.S. Treasury zero-coupon bonds with a remaining term consistent with the expected term of the instrument being valued.

##### Stock Warrants

###### *Warrant Compensation*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued an immediately vested five-year warrant to purchase 40,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share to a consultant for services rendered. The issuance date fair value of \$62,908 was immediately recognized as stock-based compensation expense which is reflected in consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

On March 1, 2017, the Company extended a previously expired agreement with a consultant from January 1, 2017 to December 31, 2017. In connection with this extension, the Company issued to the consultant an immediately vested five-year warrant to purchase 25,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The issuance date fair value of \$40,763 was immediately recognized as stock-based compensation expense which is reflected in consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations. See Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies – Consulting Agreements for details associated with the issuance of warrants as compensation.

On April 5, 2017, the Company extended a previously expired agreement with a consultant from January 1, 2017 to June 30, 2017. In connection with this extension, the Company issued a five-year immediately vested warrant to purchase 20,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.50 per share. The warrant grant date fair value of \$30,440 was recognized immediately as stock-based compensation expense which is reflected as consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

On July 12, 2017, the Company issued an immediately vested five-year warrant to purchase 25,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share to a consultant for services rendered. The warrant grant date fair value of \$40,275 was recognized immediately as stock-based compensation expense and is reflected as consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

On November 15, 2017, the Company extended a previously expired agreement with a consultant from October 1, 2017 to May 31, 2018. In connection with this extension, the Company issued a five-year immediately vested warrant to purchase 35,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The warrant grant date fair value of \$56,434 was recognized immediately as stock-based compensation expense which is reflected as consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

The Company recorded stock-based compensation expense of \$167,912 and \$62,908 during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, related to stock warrants issued as compensation, which is reflected as consulting expense in the consolidated statements of operations. As of December 31, 2017, there was no unrecognized stock-based compensation expense related to stock warrants.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

**Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Continued**

Stock Warrants - Continued

*Warrant Modifications and Exercises*

During the year ended December 31, 2016, warrants to purchase an aggregate of 60,831 shares of common stock were exercised at a reduced exercise price of \$3.50 per share (reduced from exercise prices ranging from \$4.00 to \$15.00 per share) for aggregate gross proceeds of \$212,898. The Company recognized a warrant modification charge of \$23,448 during the year ended December 31, 2016, which represents the incremental value of the modified warrants as compared to the original warrants, both valued as of the respective modification dates.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company reduced the exercise price of previously outstanding warrants to purchase an aggregate of 44,166 shares of common stock from exercise prices ranging from \$6.00 to \$15.00 per share to a new exercise price of \$4.00 per share and recognized \$5,038 of incremental expense related to the modification of the warrants which is reflected in warrant modification expense in the consolidated statements of operations.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued an aggregate of 410,625 shares of common stock pursuant to the exercise of warrants for aggregate gross proceeds of \$821,250. The shares were issued pursuant to a warrant repricing program under which the exercise price for certain outstanding and exercisable warrants for the purchase of shares of common stock of the Company was reduced to \$2.00 per share (reduced from exercise prices ranging from \$4.00 to \$30.00 per share). The warrants were exercised over a limited period of time. In connection with the share issuances, the Company issued to the purchasers of such shares additional two-year warrants for the purchase of an aggregate of 102,656 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share. The Company recognized a warrant modification charge of \$6,618 during the year ended December 31, 2017, which represents the incremental value of the modified warrants and additional warrants issued as compared to the original warrants, both valued as of the respective modification dates.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, with respect to a warrant held by an investor, the Company agreed that (i) the conditions to the exercisability of the warrant for tranches to purchase an aggregate of 35,000 shares were eliminated, such that the entire warrant to purchase 50,000 shares of common stock was exercisable, and (ii) the exercise price of the warrant was reduced from an exercise price of \$30.00 per share to \$3.50 per share. Concurrent with the modification of the warrant, the investor exercised the warrant in full for aggregate gross proceeds to the Company of \$175,000. The Company recognized a warrant modification charge of \$4,500 during the year ended December 31, 2017, which represents the incremental value of the modified warrants as compared to the original warrants, both valued as of the respective modification dates which is reflected in warrant modification expense in the consolidated statement of operations.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, with respect to warrants held by certain lenders, the Company agreed to extend the expiration dates and reduce the exercise price of certain warrants to purchase an aggregate 53,291 and 1,233,931 shares of the Company’s common stock, respectively. The expiration dates of the warrants were extended from dates ranging between December 31, 2017 through December 29, 2021 to new expiration dates ranging between December 31, 2019 and June 28, 2022. The exercise price of certain warrants was reduced from an exercise price ranging between \$4.50 and \$10.00 per share to \$4.00 per share. The Company recognized a warrant modification charge of \$18,962 during the year ended December 31, 2017, which represents the incremental value of the modified warrants as compared to the original warrants, both valued as of the respective modification dates. The charge is reflected in warrant modification expense in the consolidated statements of operations. Of the warrants with the reduced exercise prices to purchase an aggregate 1,233,931 shares of the Company’s common stock, 1,219,444 of the warrants to purchase the Company’s common stock were reduced as consideration of extending the maturity dates of certain related party notes payable and are reflected as debt discount, net of notes payable in the consolidated balance sheet. See Note 7 – Notes Payable – Related Party Notes for details.



**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Continued**

Stock Warrants - Continued

*Warrant Activity Summary*

In applying the Black-Scholes option pricing model to warrants granted, the Company used the following assumptions:

	<b>For the Years Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Risk free interest rate	1.74% - 2.07%	0.44% - 2.07%
Contractual term (years)	2.00 - 5.00	0.67 - 5.00
Expected volatility	120% - 132%	124% - 152%
Expected dividends	0.00%	0.00%

The weighted average estimated fair value of the warrants granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was approximately \$1.54 and \$1.18 per share, respectively.

See Note 6 – Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities for details regarding exchanges of accrued expenses for shares of common stock and warrants to a consultant and certain directors of the Company. See Note 7 – Notes Payable for details associated with the issuance of warrants in connection with note issuances and the exchange of notes payable. See Note 9 – Commitments and Contingencies – Consulting Agreements for details associated with the issuance of warrants as compensation. See Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Common Stock and Warrant Offerings for details associated with the issuance of warrants in connection with common stock and warrant offerings.

A summary of the warrant activity during the year ended December 31, 2017 is presented below:

	<b>Number of Warrants</b>	<b>Weighted Average Exercise Price</b>	<b>Weighted Average Remaining Life In Years</b>	<b>Aggregate Intrinsic Value</b>
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	2,953,651	\$ 5.40 <sup>[1]</sup>		
Issued	1,011,598	4.01		
Exercised	(460,625)	2.16		
Expired	(69,490)	17.19		
Outstanding, December 31, 2017	<u>3,435,134</u>	<u>\$ 4.47</u>	<u>2.8</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
Exercisable, December 31, 2017	<u>3,435,134</u>	<u>\$ 4.47</u>	<u>2.8</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

[1] Excludes the impact of a warrant to purchase 35,000 shares of common stock that had an exercise price which was the greater of \$30.00 per share or the fair market value of the common stock on the date certain performance criteria are met. Exercisability was subject to satisfaction of certain performance criteria which had not occurred as of December 31, 2016. As discussed above under Warrant Modifications and Exercises, on February 10, 2017, the performance criteria were eliminated and the exercise price was reduced to \$3.50 per share in consideration of the full exercise of the warrant by the holder.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Continued**

Stock Warrants - Continued

*Warrant Activity Summary - Continued*

The following table presents information related to stock warrants at December 31, 2017:

<b>Warrants Outstanding</b>		<b>Warrants Exercisable</b>	
<b>Exercise Price</b>	<b>Outstanding Number of Warrants</b>	<b>Weighted Average Remaining Life In Years</b>	<b>Exercisable Number of Warrants</b>
\$4.00 - \$4.99	2,935,892	2.7	2,935,892
\$5.00 - \$5.99	369,739	3.4	369,739
\$6.00 - \$7.99	40,000	2.6	40,000
\$8.00 - \$9.99	2,500	1.9	2,500
\$10.00 - \$14.99	40,400	2.2	40,400
\$15.00 - \$19.99	35,435	1.7	35,435
\$20.00 - \$80.00	11,168	0.6	11,168
	<u>3,435,134</u>	2.8	<u>3,435,134</u>

Stock Options

In applying the Black-Scholes option pricing model to stock options granted, the Company used the following assumptions:

	<b>For the Years Ended</b>	
	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Risk free interest rate	1.77% - 1.88%	1.16% - 1.53%
Expected term (years)	5.50 - 6.00	5.50 - 10.00
Expected volatility	120% - 130%	124% - 126%
Expected dividends	0.00%	0.00%

The weighted average estimated fair value of the stock options granted during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was approximately \$2.75 and \$3.24 per share, respectively.

In February 2016, the Company granted a ten-year option to a director to purchase 15,000 shares of the Company’s common stock at an exercise price of \$3.70. The shares vest ratably over three years on the issuance date anniversaries. The options had an aggregate grant date value of \$52,900 which is being amortized over the vesting period of the option.

In June 2016, the Company issued ten-year options to employees, directors and advisors to purchase an aggregate of 827,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.73 per share, pursuant to the Plan. The shares vest as follows: (i) 192,333 shares vest immediately, (ii) 384,667 shares vest ratably over two years on the issuance date anniversaries and (iii) 250,000 shares vest ratably over three years on the issuance date anniversaries. The options had an aggregate grant date value of \$2,682,800 which is being amortized over the vesting period of the options.

In August 2016, the Company granted a ten-year option to the Chairman of the Company’s Scientific Advisory Board, to purchase 15,000 shares of the Company’s common stock at an exercise price of \$3.10. The shares vest ratably over two years on the issuance date anniversaries. The option had a grant date fair value of \$41,000 which is being amortized over the vesting period of the option.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Continued**

Stock Options - Continued

On February 14, 2017, the Compensation Committee reduced the exercise price of outstanding options for the purchase of an aggregate of 1,219,450 shares of common stock of the Company (with exercise prices ranging between \$5.70 and \$30.00 per share) to \$4.70 per share, which was the closing price for the Company’s common stock on February 13, 2017, as reported by the OTCQB. The exercise price reduction related to options held by, among others, the Company’s executive officers and directors. The incremental value of the modified options compared to the original options, both valued as of the respective modification date, of \$430,394 is being recognized over the vesting term of the options.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company issued ten-year options to employees, directors, and an advisor of the Company to purchase an aggregate of 1,117,000 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging between \$2.80 to \$3.35 per share. The options vest as follows: (i) options for the purchase of 283,336 shares vested immediately, (ii) options for the purchase of 372,338 shares vest on the one-year anniversary of the issuance date, (iii) options for the purchase of 372,332 shares vest on the two-year anniversary of the issuance date and (iv) options for the purchase of 88,994 shares vest on the three-year anniversary of the issuance date. The options had an aggregate grant date value of \$3,070,600 which is being amortized over the vesting term of the respective options.

A summary of the option activity during the year ended December 31, 2017 is presented below:

	<u>Number of Options</u>	<u>Weighted Average Exercise Price</u>	<u>Weighted Average Remaining Life In Years</u>	<u>Aggregate Intrinsic Value</u>
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	2,168,950	7.53		
Granted	1,117,000	3.23		
Forfeited	(163,748)	3.69		
Outstanding, December 31, 2017	<u>3,122,202</u>	<u>\$ 4.25</u>	<u>7.9</u>	<u>\$ 490,800</u>
Exercisable, December 31, 2017	<u>1,928,380</u>	<u>\$ 4.73</u>	<u>7.1</u>	<u>\$ 103,668</u>

The following table presents information related to stock options at December 31, 2017:

<u>Options Outstanding</u>		<u>Options Exercisable</u>	
<u>Exercise Price</u>	<u>Outstanding Number of Options</u>	<u>Weighted Average Remaining Life In Years</u>	<u>Exercisable Number of Options</u>
\$2.00 - \$2.99	197,000	-	-
\$3.00 - \$3.99	1,653,667	8.4	763,842
\$4.00 - \$4.99	1,194,035	6.3	1,087,038
\$5.00 - \$5.99	5,000	6.5	5,000
\$6.00 - \$19.99	37,500	6.0	37,500
\$20.00 - \$30.00	35,000	4.2	35,000
	<u>3,122,202</u>	<u>7.1</u>	<u>1,928,380</u>

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES**

**Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 10 – Stockholders’ Deficiency – Continued**

Stock Options - Continued

The following table presents information related to stock option expense:

	For the Years Ended December 31,		Unrecognized at December 31, 2017	Weighted Average Remaining Amortization Period (Years)
	2017	2016		
Consulting	\$ 1,558,392	\$ 880,288	\$ 1,070,059	1.2
Research and development	481,041	492,061	564,486	2.0
General and administrative	1,373,459	1,001,445	848,392	1.4
	<u>\$ 3,412,892</u>	<u>\$ 2,373,794</u>	<u>\$ 2,482,937</u>	1.5

**Note 11 – Derivative Liabilities**

See Note 7 – Notes Payable – Convertible Notes for additional details associated with the issuance of certain convertible notes payable for which the embedded conversion options and mandatory redemption provisions of warrants were classified as derivative liabilities.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company recorded derivative liabilities in the amount of \$80,014 related to warrants issued in connection with certain convertible notes payable. These warrants are redeemable for cash equal to the Black-Scholes value, as defined, at the election of the warrant holder upon a fundamental transaction pursuant to the warrant terms. The Company has estimated the fair value of the warrants granted using the Black-Scholes model using the following assumptions: expected volatility of 130%, risk-free rates between 2.06% and 2.07%, contractual terms of 5 years, and expected dividends of 0%.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company recorded derivative liabilities in the amount of \$252,117 related to the embedded conversion options of convertible notes payable. The Company estimated the fair value of the original derivative liabilities using the Multinomial Lattice option pricing model (Level 3 inputs) using the following assumptions: expected volatility ranging between 123% and 133%, risk-free rates between 1.22% and 1.53%, contractual terms ranging 0.12 and 0.91 years, expected dividends of 0%, and the fair value of the Company’s freely tradable common stock as reported on the OTCQB market.

On December 31, 2017, the Company’s inputs to the Multinomial Lattice option pricing model (Level 3 inputs) were as follows: expected volatility of 129%, risk-free rates between 1.28% and 1.39%, contractual terms ranging between 0.00 and 0.11 years, expected dividends of 0%, and the fair value of the Company’s freely tradable common stock as reported on the OTCQB market. The Company recorded a gain on the change in fair value of these derivative liabilities of \$107,039 during the year ended December 31, 2017.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company reclassified \$9,019 of derivative liabilities to equity in connection with the conversion of convertible notes payable into shares of common stock.

The following table sets forth a summary of the changes in the fair value of Level 3 derivative liabilities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis:

Beginning balance as of January 1, 2017	\$ -
Issuance of derivative liabilities	332,131
Reclassification of derivative liabilities to equity	(9,019)
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	(107,039)
Ending balance as of December 31, 2017	<u>\$ 216,073</u>

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 12 – Subsequent Events

##### Notes Payable

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company issued certain lenders convertible notes payable in the aggregate principal amount of \$414,000, for aggregate cash proceeds of \$396,250. The difference of \$17,750 was recorded as a debt discount and will be amortized over the terms of the respective notes. The convertible notes bear interest at rates ranging between 10% to 12% per annum payable at maturity with maturity dates ranging between August 2018 through December 2018. The convertible notes are convertible as follows: (i) \$184,000 of aggregate principal and the respective interest is convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the respective holder at any time immediately on or after the issue dates until the respective balances have been paid in full, (ii) \$175,000 of principal and the respective interest is convertible into shares of the Company's common stock at the election of the holder after the 180<sup>th</sup> day following the issue date until the balance has been paid in full, (iii) \$55,000 of principal and respective interest is convertible into shares of the Company's stock at the election of the Company during the five days prior to maturity and ending on the day immediately prior to maturity; however, should the Company elect to convert any portion of the \$55,000 of note principal and respective accrued interest, the holder would have the right to accelerate the conversion of the remaining outstanding principal and accrued interest of the note at the same conversion price. The conversion prices of the convertible notes are equal to the greater of (a) a range between 50% to 65% of the fair value of the Company's stock or (b) \$0.75 or \$1.00 per share depending on the note. In connection with the issuance of a certain convertible note, the Company issued the lender 12,000 shares of the Company's common stock. In connection with another convertible note, the Company incurred \$25,750 of debt issuance costs. The issuance date fair value of the common stock and debt issuance costs will be recorded as debt discount and will be amortized over the terms of the respective notes.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company issued a lender a three-month note payable in the principal amount of \$58,000, which bears no interest, for cash proceeds of \$50,000. The \$8,000 difference was recorded as a debt discount and will be amortized over the term of the note. In connection with the issuance of this promissory note, the Company issued the lender 1,500 shares of the Company's common stock. The issuance date fair value of the common stock will be recorded as debt discount and will be amortized over the term of the note.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company and certain lenders agreed to exchange certain convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$117,917 and aggregate accrued interest of \$7,172 for an aggregate of 71,963 shares of the Company's common stock at prices ranging from \$1.58 to \$2.11 per share.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company elected to convert certain convertible notes with an aggregate principal balance of \$77,621 and aggregate accrued interest of \$5,283 into an aggregate of 39,733 shares of the Company's common stock at conversion prices ranging from \$1.90 to \$2.38 per share.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company and certain lenders agreed to multiple extensions of the maturity dates of notes payable with an aggregate principal balance of \$788,982 from maturity dates ranging between December 2017 to March 2018 to new maturity dates ranging from March 2018 to August 2018. In consideration of the extensions, the Company issued certain lenders an aggregate of 19,500 shares of the Company's common stock. The issuance date fair value of the common stock will be recorded as debt discount and will be amortized over the terms of the respective notes. Also in connection with one of the extensions, the Company increased the effective rate at which the note bears interest, from 0% to 8% per annum, effective February 8, 2018.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company repaid an aggregate principal amount of \$94,583 and \$25,000 of convertible and related party notes payable, respectively.

##### Consulting Agreements

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company extended a previously expired agreement with a consultant from January 1, 2018 to December 31, 2018. In connection with the amendment, the Company issued to the consultant an immediately vested five-year warrant for the purchase of 30,000 shares of the Company's common stock at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.

## BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC. & SUBSIDIARIES

### Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

#### Note 12 – Subsequent Events - Continued

##### Employment Agreements

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company entered into an employment agreement with its new Senior Vice President of Planning and Business Development (the “Senior VP”). Pursuant to the employment agreement, in the event that (a) the Senior VP’s employment is terminated by the Company without cause, or (b) the Senior VP terminates his employment for “good reason” (each as defined in the employment agreement), the Senior VP would be entitled to receive severance in an amount equal to three months of his then annual base salary.

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company’s Compensation Committee approved the extension of the CEO’s employment agreement from March 31, 2018 to December 31, 2019. In connection with the extension, the CEO is entitled to new performance-based cash bonuses payable for the years ending December 31, 2018 and 2019, such that an aggregate of up to 50% of the CEO’s then annual base salary per annum could be earned for such year pursuant to the satisfaction of such goals.

##### Options

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company granted the Senior VP a ten-year option to purchase 500,000 shares of the Company’s common stock at an exercise price of \$3.40 per share. The shares vest based upon the achievement of certain performance conditions.

##### Stock Warrants

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company issued an aggregate of 226,084 shares of the Company’s common stock pursuant to the exercise of warrants for aggregate gross proceeds of \$414,168 and in exchange for \$38,000 of previously accrued consulting fees. The shares were issued pursuant to a warrant repricing program under which the exercise price for certain outstanding and exercisable warrants for the purchase of shares of common stock of the Company was reduced to \$2.00 per share (reduced from exercises prices ranging from \$4.00 to \$5.00 per share). The warrants were exercised over a limited period of time. In connection with the share issuances, the Company issued to the purchasers of such shares additional two-year warrants for the purchase of an aggregate of 56,521 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.00 per share.



BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.  
40 Marcus Drive  
Melville, New York 11747

March 29, 2018

Mark Weinreb  
9 Colgate Lane  
Woodbury, New York 11797

Dear Mr. Weinreb:

Reference is made to the Executive Employment Agreement, dated as of March 9, 2015, between BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the “Company”) and Mark Weinreb (the “Executive”), as amended (the “Employment Agreement”). All capitalized terms used and not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Employment Agreement.

The parties hereby agree that (i) the reference in Section 5(a)(iv) of the Employment Agreement to “March 31, 2018” is amended to read “December 31, 2019” and (ii) the reference to “Bonus” on Schedule A of the Employment Agreement is amended to read as set forth on Schedule A attached hereto.

Except as amended hereby, the Employment Agreement shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms.

This letter agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with regard to the subject matter hereof. This letter agreement supersedes all prior negotiations, understandings and agreements between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof, and each party acknowledges and agrees that it has not relied on any representations or promises in connection with this letter agreement not contained herein.

This letter agreement may not be amended, modified, waived or canceled, in part or in full, except in a writing signed by both parties.

This letter agreement may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

This letter agreement shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York, excluding choice of law principles thereof.

Very truly yours,

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Mandy Clyde  
Vice President, Operations

Agreed:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Mark Weinreb



SCHEDULE A

**Bonus:** 2018 and 2019: 50% of Per Annum Salary based upon the satisfaction of certain performance goals. The performance goals for 2018 and 2019 will be established by April 30, 2018 and March 31, 2019, respectively, by the Compensation Committee of the Board (the "Compensation Committee") based upon the level of achievement of the Company's corporate goals and objectives for the calendar year with respect to which the Bonus relates and the Executive's individual performance (in each case, as reasonably determined by the Compensation Committee). The Compensation Committee will take into consideration the Executive's input with respect to the establishment of the Executive's individual goals and objectives. The Compensation Committee may, in its discretion, award the Executive a Bonus in an amount greater than 50% of Per Annum Salary depending on the Executive's level of achievement of the performance targets.

---





November 17, 2017

John M. Desmarais, Trustee  
Tuxis Trust  
26 Deer Creek Lane  
Mt. Kisco, New York 10549

Dear Mr. Desmarais:

Reference is made to that certain Promissory Note, dated June 30, 2016 (the "Note"), issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the "Company") to Tuxis Trust (the "Lender") in the principal amount of \$500,000 (the "Principal Amount"). The Note, as amended, provides that the Principal Amount, together with accrued interest thereon, is payable on December 1, 2017 (the "Maturity Date").

The Lender hereby waives any and all defaults by the Company under the Note. The parties agree that the Note is hereby amended such that the Maturity Date for the payment of the Principal Amount, together with accrued interest thereon, shall be extended to December 1, 2018.

Except as modified herein, the Note shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms. In addition, the Security Agreement, dated as of July 13, 2017, by and among the Company, the Lender, John M. Desmarais and John M. Desmarais, as representative, shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms.

This letter may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

This letter shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York, excluding choice of law principles thereof.

Very truly yours,

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Mark Weinreb  
Chief Executive Officer

Agreed:

TUXIS TRUST

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
John M. Desmarais, Trustee





**AMENDMENT TO CONVERTIBLE PROMISSORY NOTE**

This Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note (this “**Amendment**”) is entered into as of January 15, 2018, by and between ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company (“**Lender**”), and BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Borrower**”). Capitalized terms used in this Amendment without definition shall have the meanings given to them in the Fourth Exchange Note (as defined below).

A. Pursuant to that certain Note Purchase Agreement by and between Holder and Company dated August 4, 2016 (the “**Purchase Agreement**”), Company issued to Holder a certain Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$242,000.00 and having an original issue date of August 4, 2016 (the “**Original Note**”).

B. On May 9, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the Original Note for (i) a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$215,250.00 and having an original issue date of August 4, 2016 (as amended, the “**First Exchange Note**”), and (ii) 7,000 shares of Company common stock, \$0.001 par value per share (the “**Common Stock**”).

C. On June 9, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the First Exchange Note for (i) a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$215,250.00 and having an original issuance date of August 4, 2016 (the “**Second Exchange Note**”), and (ii) 2,500 shares of Common Stock.

D. On August 2, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the Second Exchange Note for a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$215,250.00 and having an original issuance date of August 4, 2016 (the “**Third Exchange Note**”).

E. On October 17, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the Third Exchange Note for a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$188,349.35 and having an original issuance date of August 4, 2016 (the “**Fourth Exchange Note**”).

F. Borrower has requested that Lender extend the Maturity Date of the Fourth Exchange Note (the “**Extension**”).

G. Lender has agreed, subject to the terms, amendments, conditions and understandings expressed in this Amendment, to grant the Extension.

NOW THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, the parties agree as follows:

1. Recitals. Each of the parties hereto acknowledges and agrees that the recitals set forth above in this Amendment are true and accurate and are hereby incorporated into and made a part of this Amendment.

2. Extension. The first sentence of the Fourth Exchange Note is deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following:

---

“FOR VALUE RECEIVED, BioRESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Borrower**”), promises to pay to St. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company, or its successors or assigns (“**Lender**”), \$188,349.35 and any interest, fees, charges, and late fees on March 1, 2018 (the “**Maturity Date**”) in accordance with the terms set forth herein and to pay interest on the Outstanding Balance at the rate of eight percent (8%) per annum from the Exchange Date (as defined below) until the same is paid in full.”

3. Affirmation of Fourth Exchange Note Balance. The Fourth Exchange Note shall be and remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms and is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects. Borrower and Lender agree that the outstanding balance of the Fourth Exchange Note as of the date hereof is \$153,435.24.

4. Representations and Warranties. In order to induce Lender to enter into this Amendment, Borrower, for itself, and for its affiliates, successors and assigns, hereby acknowledges, represents, warrants and agrees as follows:

(a) Borrower has full power and authority to enter into this Amendment and to incur and perform all obligations and covenants contained herein, all of which have been duly authorized by all proper and necessary action. No consent, approval, filing or registration with or notice to any governmental authority is required as a condition to the validity of this Amendment or the performance of any of the obligations of Borrower hereunder.

(b) There is no fact known to Borrower or which should be known to Borrower which Borrower has not disclosed to Lender on or prior to the date of this Amendment which would or could materially and adversely affect the understanding of Lender expressed in this Amendment or any representation, warranty, or recital contained in this Amendment.

(c) Except as expressly set forth in this Amendment, Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither the execution and delivery of this Amendment nor any of the terms, provisions, covenants, or agreements contained in this Amendment shall in any manner release, impair, lessen, modify, waive, or otherwise affect the liability and obligations of Borrower under the terms of the Transaction Documents.

(d) Borrower has no defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action of any kind or nature whatsoever against Lender, directly or indirectly, arising out of, based upon, or in any manner connected with, the transactions contemplated hereby, whether known or unknown, which occurred, existed, was taken, permitted, or begun prior to the execution of this Amendment and occurred, existed, was taken, permitted or begun in accordance with, pursuant to, or by virtue of any of the terms or conditions of the Transaction Documents. To the extent any such defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action exist or existed, such defenses, rights, claims, counterclaims, actions and causes of action are hereby waived, discharged and released. Borrower hereby acknowledges and agrees that the execution of this Amendment by Lender shall not constitute an acknowledgment of or admission by Lender of the existence of any claims or of liability for any matter or precedent upon which any claim or liability may be asserted.

(e) Borrower represents and warrants that as of the date hereof no Events of Default or other material breaches exist under the Transaction Documents or have occurred prior to the date hereof.

5. Certain Acknowledgments. Each of the parties acknowledges and agrees that no property or cash consideration of any kind whatsoever has been or shall be given by Lender to Borrower in connection with the Extension or any other amendment to the Fourth Exchange Note granted herein.

6. Other Terms Unchanged. The Fourth Exchange Note, as amended by this Amendment, remains and continues in full force and effect, constitutes legal, valid, and binding obligations of each of the parties, and is in all respects agreed to, ratified, and confirmed. Any reference to the Fourth Exchange Note after the date of this Amendment is deemed to be a reference to the Fourth Exchange Note as amended by this Amendment. If there is a conflict between the terms of this Amendment and the Fourth Exchange Note, the terms of this Amendment shall control. No forbearance or waiver may be implied by this Amendment. Except as expressly set forth herein, the execution, delivery, and performance of this Amendment shall not operate as a waiver of, or as an amendment to, any right, power, or remedy of Lender under the Fourth Exchange Note, as in effect prior to the date hereof. For the avoidance of doubt, this Amendment shall be subject to the governing law, venue, and Arbitration Provisions, as set forth in the Fourth Exchange Note.

7. No Reliance. Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither Lender nor any of its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, representatives or agents has made any representations or warranties to Borrower or any of its agents, representatives, officers, directors, or employees except as expressly set forth in this Amendment and the Transaction Documents and, in making its decision to enter into the transactions contemplated by this Amendment, Borrower is not relying on any representation, warranty, covenant or promise of Lender or its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, agents or representatives other than as set forth in this Amendment.

8. Counterparts. This Amendment may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one instrument. The parties hereto confirm that any electronic copy of another party's executed counterpart of this Amendment (or such party's signature page thereof) will be deemed to be an executed original thereof.

9. Further Assurances. Each party shall do and perform or cause to be done and performed, all such further acts and things, and shall execute and deliver all such other agreements, certificates, instruments and documents, as the other party may reasonably request in order to carry out the intent and accomplish the purposes of this Amendment and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have executed this Amendment as of the date set forth above.

**BORROWER:**

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**LENDER:**

ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC

By: Fife Trading, Inc., its Manager

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
John M. Fife, President

*[Signature page to Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note]*

---





**AMENDMENT TO CONVERTIBLE PROMISSORY NOTE**

This Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note (this "**Amendment**") is entered into as of January 15, 2018, by and between ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company ("**Lender**"), and BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation ("**Borrower**"). Capitalized terms used in this Amendment without definition shall have the meanings given to them in the Second Exchange Note (as defined below).

A. Pursuant to that certain Note Purchase Agreement by and between Holder and Company dated January 3, 2017 (the "**Purchase Agreement**"), Company issued to Holder a certain Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$242,000.00 and having an original issue date of January 3, 2017 (the "**Original Note**").

B. On August 2, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the Original Note for a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$242,000.00 and having an original issue date of January 3, 2017 (as amended, the "**First Exchange Note**").

C. On October 17, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the First Exchange Note for a new Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$245,764.44 and having an original issuance date of January 3, 2017 (the "**Second Exchange Note**").

D. Borrower has requested that Lender extend the Maturity Date of the Second Exchange Note (the "**Extension**").

E. Lender has agreed, subject to the terms, amendments, conditions and understandings expressed in this Amendment, to grant the Extension.

NOW THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, the parties agree as follows:

1. **Recitals.** Each of the parties hereto acknowledges and agrees that the recitals set forth above in this Amendment are true and accurate and are hereby incorporated into and made a part of this Amendment.

2. **Extension.** The first sentence of the Second Exchange Note is deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following:

"FOR VALUE RECEIVED, BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation ("**Borrower**"), promises to pay to ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company, or its successors or assigns ("**Lender**"), \$245,764.44 and any interest, fees, charges, and late fees on March 1, 2018 (the "**Maturity Date**") in accordance with the terms set forth herein and to pay interest on the Outstanding Balance at the rate of eight percent (8%) per annum from the Exchange Date (as defined below) until the same is paid in full."

---

3. Affirmation of Second Exchange Note Balance. The Second Exchange Note shall be and remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms and is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects. Borrower and Lender agree that the outstanding balance of the Second Exchange Note as of the date hereof is \$250,927.11.

4. Representations and Warranties. In order to induce Lender to enter into this Amendment, Borrower, for itself, and for its affiliates, successors and assigns, hereby acknowledges, represents, warrants and agrees as follows:

(a) Borrower has full power and authority to enter into this Amendment and to incur and perform all obligations and covenants contained herein, all of which have been duly authorized by all proper and necessary action. No consent, approval, filing or registration with or notice to any governmental authority is required as a condition to the validity of this Amendment or the performance of any of the obligations of Borrower hereunder.

(b) There is no fact known to Borrower or which should be known to Borrower which Borrower has not disclosed to Lender on or prior to the date of this Amendment which would or could materially and adversely affect the understanding of Lender expressed in this Amendment or any representation, warranty, or recital contained in this Amendment.

(c) Except as expressly set forth in this Amendment, Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither the execution and delivery of this Amendment nor any of the terms, provisions, covenants, or agreements contained in this Amendment shall in any manner release, impair, lessen, modify, waive, or otherwise affect the liability and obligations of Borrower under the terms of the Transaction Documents.

(d) Borrower has no defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action of any kind or nature whatsoever against Lender, directly or indirectly, arising out of, based upon, or in any manner connected with, the transactions contemplated hereby, whether known or unknown, which occurred, existed, was taken, permitted, or begun prior to the execution of this Amendment and occurred, existed, was taken, permitted or begun in accordance with, pursuant to, or by virtue of any of the terms or conditions of the Transaction Documents. To the extent any such defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action exist or existed, such defenses, rights, claims, counterclaims, actions and causes of action are hereby waived, discharged and released. Borrower hereby acknowledges and agrees that the execution of this Amendment by Lender shall not constitute an acknowledgment of or admission by Lender of the existence of any claims or of liability for any matter or precedent upon which any claim or liability may be asserted.

(e) Borrower represents and warrants that as of the date hereof no Events of Default or other material breaches exist under the Transaction Documents or have occurred prior to the date hereof.

5. Certain Acknowledgments. Each of the parties acknowledges and agrees that no property or cash consideration of any kind whatsoever has been or shall be given by Lender to Borrower in connection with the Extension or any other amendment to the Second Exchange Note granted herein.

6. Other Terms Unchanged. The Second Exchange Note, as amended by this Amendment, remains and continues in full force and effect, constitutes legal, valid, and binding obligations of each of the parties, and is in all respects agreed to, ratified, and confirmed. Any reference to the Second Exchange Note after the date of this Amendment is deemed to be a reference to the Second Exchange Note as amended by this Amendment. If there is a conflict between the terms of this Amendment and the Second Exchange Note, the terms of this Amendment shall control. No forbearance or waiver may be implied by this Amendment. Except as expressly set forth herein, the execution, delivery, and performance of this Amendment shall not operate as a waiver of, or as an amendment to, any right, power, or remedy of Lender under the Second Exchange Note, as in effect prior to the date hereof. For the avoidance of doubt, this Amendment shall be subject to the governing law, venue, and Arbitration Provisions, as set forth in the Second Exchange Note.

7. No Reliance. Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither Lender nor any of its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, representatives or agents has made any representations or warranties to Borrower or any of its agents, representatives, officers, directors, or employees except as expressly set forth in this Amendment and the Transaction Documents and, in making its decision to enter into the transactions contemplated by this Amendment, Borrower is not relying on any representation, warranty, covenant or promise of Lender or its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, agents or representatives other than as set forth in this Amendment.

8. Counterparts. This Amendment may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one instrument. The parties hereto confirm that any electronic copy of another party's executed counterpart of this Amendment (or such party's signature page thereof) will be deemed to be an executed original thereof.

9. Further Assurances. Each party shall do and perform or cause to be done and performed, all such further acts and things, and shall execute and deliver all such other agreements, certificates, instruments and documents, as the other party may reasonably request in order to carry out the intent and accomplish the purposes of this Amendment and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

*[Remainder of page intentionally left blank; signature page follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have executed this Amendment as of the date set forth above.

**BORROWER:**

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**LENDER:**

ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC

By: Fife Trading, Inc., its Manager

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
John M. Fife, President

*[Signature page to Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note]*

---



**AMENDMENT TO CONVERTIBLE PROMISSORY NOTE**

This Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note (this “**Amendment**”) is entered into as of February 15, 2018, by and between ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company (“**Lender**”), and BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Borrower**”). Capitalized terms used in this Amendment without definition shall have the meanings given to them in the Second Exchange Note (as defined below).

A. Pursuant to that certain Securities Purchase Agreement by and between Holder and Company dated May 10, 2017 (the “**Purchase Agreement**”), Company issued to Holder a certain Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$180,000.00 and having an original issue date of May 10, 2017 (the “**Original Note**”).

B. On September 7, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the Original Note for a new Convertible Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$180,000.00 and having an original issue date of May 10, 2017 (the “**First Exchange Note**”).

C. On December 8, 2017, Holder and Company exchanged the First Exchange Note for a new Convertible Promissory Note in the original principal amount of \$175,671.75 and having an original issuance date of May 10, 2107 (the “**Second Exchange Note**”).

D. Borrower has requested that Lender extend the Maturity Date of the Second Exchange Note (the “**Extension**”).

E. Lender has agreed, subject to the terms, amendments, conditions and understandings expressed in this Amendment, to grant the Extension.

NOW THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, the parties agree as follows:

1. Recitals. Each of the parties hereto acknowledges and agrees that the recitals set forth above in this Amendment are true and accurate and are hereby incorporated into and made a part of this Amendment.

2. Extension. The first sentence of the Second Exchange Note is deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following:

“FOR VALUE RECEIVED, BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Borrower**”), promises to pay to ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC, a Utah limited liability company, or its successors or assigns (“**Lender**”), \$175,671.75 and any interest, fees, charges, and late fees on May 10, 2018 (the “**Maturity Date**”) in accordance with the terms set forth herein and to pay interest on the Outstanding Balance at the rate of eight percent (8%) per annum from the Exchange Date (as defined below) until the same is paid in full.”

---

3. Affirmation of Second Exchange Note Balance. The Second Exchange Note shall be and remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms and is hereby ratified and confirmed in all respects. Borrower and Lender agree that the outstanding balance of the Second Exchange Note as of the date hereof is \$178,360.60.

4. Representations and Warranties. In order to induce Lender to enter into this Amendment, Borrower, for itself, and for its affiliates, successors and assigns, hereby acknowledges, represents, warrants and agrees as follows:

(a) Borrower has full power and authority to enter into this Amendment and to incur and perform all obligations and covenants contained herein, all of which have been duly authorized by all proper and necessary action. No consent, approval, filing or registration with or notice to any governmental authority is required as a condition to the validity of this Amendment or the performance of any of the obligations of Borrower hereunder.

(b) There is no fact known to Borrower or which should be known to Borrower which Borrower has not disclosed to Lender on or prior to the date of this Amendment which would or could materially and adversely affect the understanding of Lender expressed in this Amendment or any representation, warranty, or recital contained in this Amendment.

(c) Except as expressly set forth in this Amendment, Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither the execution and delivery of this Amendment nor any of the terms, provisions, covenants, or agreements contained in this Amendment shall in any manner release, impair, lessen, modify, waive, or otherwise affect the liability and obligations of Borrower under the terms of the Transaction Documents.

(d) Borrower has no defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action of any kind or nature whatsoever against Lender, directly or indirectly, arising out of, based upon, or in any manner connected with, the transactions contemplated hereby, whether known or unknown, which occurred, existed, was taken, permitted, or begun prior to the execution of this Amendment and occurred, existed, was taken, permitted or begun in accordance with, pursuant to, or by virtue of any of the terms or conditions of the Transaction Documents. To the extent any such defenses, affirmative or otherwise, rights of setoff, rights of recoupment, claims, counterclaims, actions or causes of action exist or existed, such defenses, rights, claims, counterclaims, actions and causes of action are hereby waived, discharged and released. Borrower hereby acknowledges and agrees that the execution of this Amendment by Lender shall not constitute an acknowledgment of or admission by Lender of the existence of any claims or of liability for any matter or precedent upon which any claim or liability may be asserted.

(e) Borrower represents and warrants that as of the date hereof no Events of Default or other material breaches exist under the Transaction Documents or have occurred prior to the date hereof.

5. Certain Acknowledgments. Each of the parties acknowledges and agrees that no property or cash consideration of any kind whatsoever has been or shall be given by Lender to Borrower in connection with the Extension or any other amendment to the Second Exchange Note granted herein.



6. Other Terms Unchanged. The Second Exchange Note, as amended by this Amendment, remains and continues in full force and effect, constitutes legal, valid, and binding obligations of each of the parties, and is in all respects agreed to, ratified, and confirmed. Any reference to the Second Exchange Note after the date of this Amendment is deemed to be a reference to the Second Exchange Note as amended by this Amendment. If there is a conflict between the terms of this Amendment and the Second Exchange Note, the terms of this Amendment shall control. No forbearance or waiver may be implied by this Amendment. Except as expressly set forth herein, the execution, delivery, and performance of this Amendment shall not operate as a waiver of, or as an amendment to, any right, power, or remedy of Lender under the Second Exchange Note, as in effect prior to the date hereof. For the avoidance of doubt, this Amendment shall be subject to the governing law, venue, and Arbitration Provisions, as set forth in the Second Exchange Note.

7. No Reliance. Borrower acknowledges and agrees that neither Lender nor any of its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, representatives or agents has made any representations or warranties to Borrower or any of its agents, representatives, officers, directors, or employees except as expressly set forth in this Amendment and the Transaction Documents and, in making its decision to enter into the transactions contemplated by this Amendment, Borrower is not relying on any representation, warranty, covenant or promise of Lender or its officers, directors, members, managers, equity holders, agents or representatives other than as set forth in this Amendment.

8. Counterparts. This Amendment may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one instrument. The parties hereto confirm that any electronic copy of another party's executed counterpart of this Amendment (or such party's signature page thereof) will be deemed to be an executed original thereof.

9. Further Assurances. Each party shall do and perform or cause to be done and performed, all such further acts and things, and shall execute and deliver all such other agreements, certificates, instruments and documents, as the other party may reasonably request in order to carry out the intent and accomplish the purposes of this Amendment and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have executed this Amendment as of the date set forth above.

**BORROWER:**

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**LENDER:**

ST. GEORGE INVESTMENTS LLC

By: Fife Trading, Inc., its Manager

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
John M. Fife, President

*[Signature page to Amendment to Convertible Promissory Note]*

---





November 17, 2017

John M. Desmarais  
26 Deer Creek Lane  
Mt. Kisco, New York 10549

Dear Mr. Desmarais:

Reference is made to that certain Promissory Note, dated July 13, 2017 (the "Note"), issued by BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the "Company") to John M. Desmarais (the "Lender") in the principal amount of \$175,000 (the "Principal Amount"). The Note provides that the Principal Amount, together with accrued interest thereon, is payable on December 1, 2017 (the "Maturity Date").

The Lender hereby waives any and all defaults by the Company under the Note. The parties agree that the Note is hereby amended such that the Maturity Date for the payment of the Principal Amount, together with accrued interest thereon, shall be extended to December 1, 2018.

In consideration of the foregoing, the Company agrees that the exercise price of the Warrants, dated March 18, 2016, issued to the Lender for the purchase of 444,444, 400,000 and 250,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock, respectively, and the Warrant, dated November 17, 2015, issued to the Lender for the purchase of 125,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock (collectively, the "Warrants") is reduced to \$4.00 per share.

Except as modified herein, the Note and the Warrants shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with their respective terms. In addition, the Security Agreement, dated as of July 13, 2017, by and among the Company, Tuxis Trust, the Lender and John M. Desmarais, as representative, shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms.

This letter may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

This letter shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York, excluding choice of law principles thereof.

Very truly yours,

BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Mark Weinreb  
Chief Executive Officer

Agreed:

\_\_\_\_\_  
John M. Desmarais



**NEITHER THE ISSUANCE NOR SALE OF THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE NOR THE SECURITIES INTO WHICH THESE SECURITIES ARE CONVERTIBLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE SECURITIES MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED (I) IN THE ABSENCE OF (A) AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT FOR THE SECURITIES UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR (B) AN OPINION OF COUNSEL (WHICH COUNSEL SHALL BE COMPANY COUNSEL OR COUNSEL SELECTED BY THE HOLDER), IN A GENERALLY ACCEPTABLE FORM, THAT REGISTRATION IS NOT REQUIRED UNDER SAID ACT OR (II) UNLESS SOLD PURSUANT TO RULE 144 OR RULE 144A UNDER SAID ACT. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, THE SECURITIES MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN OR FINANCING ARRANGEMENT SECURED BY THE SECURITIES.**

Principal Amount: US\$175,000.00

Issue Date: March 27, 2018

Purchase Price: US\$175,000.00

#### **CONVERTIBLE PROMISSORY NOTE**

**FOR VALUE RECEIVED, BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.**, a Delaware corporation (hereinafter called the "Borrower"), hereby promises to pay to the order of **AUCTUS FUND, LLC**, a Delaware limited liability company, or registered assigns (the "Holder") the principal sum of \$175,000 (the "Principal Amount"), together with interest at the rate of twelve percent (12%) per annum from the date hereof (the "Issue Date") until the same becomes due and payable, whether at maturity or upon acceleration by prepayment or otherwise, as set forth herein (the "Note"). The maturity date shall be nine (9) months from the Issue Date (the "Maturity Date"), and is the date upon which the principal sum, as well as any accrued and unpaid interest and other fees shall be due and payable. This Note may not be prepaid in whole or in part except as otherwise explicitly set forth herein. Any amount of principal or interest on this Note, which is not paid when due, shall bear interest at the rate of the lesser of (i) eighteen percent (18%) per annum or (ii) the maximum amount allowed by law from the due date thereof until the same is paid (the "Default Interest"). Interest shall commence accruing on the date that the Note is fully paid and shall be computed on the basis of a 365-day year and the actual number of days elapsed. All payments due hereunder (to the extent not converted into the Borrower's common stock, \$0.001 par value per share (the "Common Stock") in accordance with the terms hereof) shall be made in lawful money of the United States of America. All payments shall be made at such address as the Holder shall hereafter give to the Borrower by written notice made in accordance with the provisions of this Note. Whenever any amount expressed to be due by the terms of this Note is due on any day which is not a business day, the same shall instead be due on the next succeeding day which is a business day and, in the case of any interest payment date which is not the date on which this Note is paid in full, the extension of the due date thereof shall not be taken into account for purposes of determining the amount of interest due on such date. As used in this Note, the term "business day" shall mean any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or a day on which commercial banks in the city of New York, New York are authorized or required by law or executive order to remain closed. Each capitalized term used herein, and not otherwise defined, shall have the meaning ascribed thereto in that certain Securities Purchase Agreement dated the date hereof, pursuant to which this Note was originally issued (the "Purchase Agreement").

---

This Note is free from all taxes, liens, claims and encumbrances with respect to the issue thereof and shall not be subject to preemptive rights or other similar rights of shareholders of the Borrower and will not impose personal liability upon the holder thereof.

The following terms shall apply to this Note:

#### ARTICLE I. CONVERSION RIGHTS

1.1 Conversion Right. The Holder shall have the right at any time following the 180<sup>th</sup> calendar day after the Issue Date to convert all or any part of the outstanding and unpaid principal amount of this Note into fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock, as such Common Stock exists on the Issue Date, or any shares of capital stock or other securities of the Borrower into which such Common Stock shall hereafter be changed or reclassified at the Conversion Price (as defined below) determined as provided herein (a "Conversion"); provided, however, that in no event shall the Holder be entitled to convert any portion of this Note in excess of that portion of this Note upon conversion of which the sum of (1) the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its affiliates (other than shares of Common Stock which may be deemed beneficially owned through the ownership of the unconverted portion of the Notes or the unexercised or unconverted portion of any other security of the Borrower subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitations contained herein) and (2) the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon the conversion of the portion of this Note with respect to which the determination of this proviso is being made, would result in beneficial ownership by the Holder and its affiliates of more than 4.99% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock. For purposes of the proviso to the immediately preceding sentence, beneficial ownership shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), and Regulations 13D-G thereunder, except as otherwise provided in clause (1) of such proviso, provided, further, however, that the limitations on conversion may be waived by the Holder (up to a maximum of 9.99%) upon, at the election of the Holder, not less than 61 days' prior notice to the Borrower, and the provisions of the conversion limitation shall continue to apply until such 61st day (or such later date, as determined by the Holder, as may be specified in such notice of waiver). The number of shares of Common Stock to be issued upon each conversion of this Note shall be determined by dividing the Conversion Amount (as defined below) by the applicable Conversion Price then in effect on the date specified in the notice of conversion, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the "Notice of Conversion"), delivered to the Borrower by the Holder in accordance with Section 1.4 below; provided that the Notice of Conversion is submitted by facsimile or e-mail (or by other means resulting in, or reasonably expected to result in, notice) to the Borrower before 6:00 p.m., New York, New York time on such conversion date (the "Conversion Date"). The term "Conversion Amount" means, with respect to any conversion of this Note, the sum of (1) the principal amount of this Note to be converted in such conversion plus (2) at the Holder's option, accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on such principal amount at the interest rates provided in this Note to the Conversion Date, provided, however, that the Borrower shall have the right to pay any or all interest in cash plus (3) at the Holder's option, Default Interest, if any, on the amounts referred to in the immediately preceding clauses (1) and/or (2) plus (4) at the Holder's option, any amounts owed to the Holder pursuant to Sections 1.3 and 1.4(g) hereof.

## 1.2 Conversion Price.

(a) Calculation of Conversion Price. Subject to the adjustments described herein, the conversion price (the "Conversion Price") shall be the Variable Conversion Price (as defined herein) (subject to equitable adjustments for reverse stock splits, stock splits, stock dividends or rights offerings by the Borrower relating to the Borrower's securities or the securities of any subsidiary of the Borrower, combinations, recapitalization, reclassifications, extraordinary distributions and similar events). The "Variable Conversion Price" shall mean 58% multiplied by the Market Price (as defined herein) (representing a discount rate of 42%); provided, however, that in no event shall the Variable Conversion Price be less than one dollar and fifty cents (\$1.50) (the "Floor Price") except as provided herein (subject to equitable adjustment as set forth above). Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, the Floor Price shall no longer apply following the 180<sup>th</sup> calendar day after the Issue Date. "Market Price" means the lowest Trading Price (as defined below) for the Common Stock during the ten (10) Trading Day period ending on the last complete Trading Day prior to the Conversion Date. "Trading Price" means, for any security as of any date, the closing price on the OTC Pink, OTCQB, or applicable trading market (the "OTCQB") as reported by a reliable reporting service ("Reporting Service") designated by the Holder (i.e. [www.Nasdaq.com](http://www.Nasdaq.com)) or, if the OTCQB is not the principal trading market for such security, the average of the closing bid and asked prices for such security on the principal securities exchange or trading market where such security is listed or traded or, if no closing bid price for such security is available in any of the foregoing manners, the average of the closing bid and asked prices of any market makers for such security that are quoted on the OTC Markets. If the Trading Price cannot be calculated for such security on such date in the manner provided above, the Trading Price shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Borrower and the holders of a majority in interest of the Notes being converted for which the calculation of the Trading Price is required in order to determine the Conversion Price of such Notes. "Trading Day" shall mean any day on which the Common Stock is tradable for any period on the OTCQB, or on the principal securities exchange or other securities market on which the Common Stock is then being traded.

The Borrower shall be responsible for the fees of its transfer agent and all DTC fees associated with any such issuance. Holder shall be entitled to deduct \$250.00 from the conversion amount in each Notice of Conversion to cover Holder's deposit fees associated with each Notice of Conversion.

If at any time the Conversion Price as determined hereunder for any conversion would be less than the par value of the Common Stock, then at the sole discretion of the Holder, the Conversion Price hereunder may equal such par value for such conversion and the Conversion Amount for such conversion may be increased to include Additional Principal, where "Additional Principal" means such additional amount to be added to the Conversion Amount to the extent necessary to cause the number of conversion shares issuable upon such conversion to equal the same number of conversion shares as would have been issued had the Conversion Price not been adjusted by the Holder to the par value price.



1.3 Authorized Shares. The Borrower covenants that during the period the conversion right exists, the Borrower will reserve from its authorized and unissued Common Stock a sufficient number of shares, free from preemptive rights, to provide for the issuance of Common Stock upon the full conversion of this Note issued pursuant to the Purchase Agreement. The Borrower is required at all times to have authorized and reserved seven (7) times the number of shares that is actually issuable upon full conversion of the Note (based on the Conversion Price of the Notes in effect from time to time) (the "Reserved Amount"). The Reserved Amount shall be increased from time to time in accordance with the Borrower's obligations hereunder. The Borrower represents that upon issuance, such shares will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. In addition, if the Borrower shall issue any securities or make any change to its capital structure which would change the number of shares of Common Stock into which the Notes shall be convertible at the then current Conversion Price, the Borrower shall at the same time make proper provision so that thereafter there shall be a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock authorized and reserved, free from preemptive rights, for conversion of the outstanding Note. The Borrower (i) acknowledges that it has irrevocably instructed its transfer agent to issue certificates for the Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note, and (ii) agrees that its issuance of this Note shall constitute full authority to its officers and agents who are charged with the duty of executing stock certificates to execute and issue the necessary certificates for shares of Common Stock in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Note.

If, at any time the Borrower does not maintain the Reserved Amount, and such failure continues unremedied for a period of fourteen (14) days following receipt of written notice thereof from the Holder, it will be considered an Event of Default under Section 3.2 of the Note.

1.4 Method of Conversion.

(a) Mechanics of Conversion. Subject to Section 1.1, this Note may be converted by the Holder, in whole or in part, at any time from time to time after the 180<sup>th</sup> calendar day after the Issue Date, by (A) submitting to the Borrower a Notice of Conversion (by facsimile, e-mail or other reasonable means of communication dispatched on the Conversion Date prior to 5:00 p.m., New York, New York time) and (B) subject to Section 1.4(b), surrendering this Note at the principal office of the Borrower.

(b) Surrender of Note Upon Conversion. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary set forth herein, upon conversion of this Note in accordance with the terms hereof, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Note to the Borrower unless the entire unpaid principal amount of this Note is so converted. The Holder and the Borrower shall maintain records showing the principal amount so converted and the dates of such conversions or shall use such other method, reasonably satisfactory to the Holder and the Borrower, so as not to require physical surrender of this Note upon each such conversion. In the event of any dispute or discrepancy, such records of the Borrower shall, prima facie, be controlling and determinative in the absence of manifest error. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any portion of this Note is converted as aforesaid, the Holder may not transfer this Note unless the Holder first physically surrenders this Note to the Borrower, whereupon the Borrower will forthwith issue and deliver upon the order of the Holder a new Note of like tenor, registered as the Holder (upon payment by the Holder of any applicable transfer taxes) may request, representing in the aggregate the remaining unpaid principal amount of this Note. The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Note, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of this paragraph, following conversion of a portion of this Note, the unpaid and unconverted principal amount of this Note represented by this Note may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.

(c) Payment of Taxes. The Borrower shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issue and delivery of shares of Common Stock or other securities or property on conversion of this Note in a name other than that of the Holder (or in street name), and the Borrower shall not be required to issue or deliver any such shares or other securities or property unless and until the person or persons (other than the Holder or the custodian in whose street name such shares are to be held for the Holder's account) requesting the issuance thereof shall have paid to the Borrower the amount of any such tax or shall have established to the satisfaction of the Borrower that such tax has been paid.

(d) Delivery of Common Stock Upon Conversion. Upon receipt by the Borrower from the Holder of a facsimile transmission or e-mail (or other reasonable means of communication) of a Notice of Conversion meeting the requirements for conversion as provided in this Section 1.4, the Borrower shall issue and deliver or cause to be issued and delivered to or upon the order of the Holder certificates for the Common Stock issuable upon such conversion within three (3) business days after such receipt (the "Deadline") (and, solely in the case of conversion of the entire unpaid principal amount hereof, surrender of this Note) in accordance with the terms hereof and the Purchase Agreement.

(e) Obligation of Borrower to Deliver Common Stock. Upon receipt by the Borrower of a Notice of Conversion, the Holder shall be deemed to be the holder of record of the Common Stock issuable upon such conversion, the outstanding principal amount and the amount of accrued and unpaid interest on this Note shall be reduced to reflect such conversion, and, unless the Borrower defaults on its obligations under this Article I, all rights with respect to the portion of this Note being so converted shall forthwith terminate except the right to receive the Common Stock or other securities, cash or other assets, as herein provided, on such conversion. If the Holder shall have given a Notice of Conversion as provided herein, the Borrower's obligation to issue and deliver the certificates for Common Stock shall be absolute and unconditional, irrespective of the absence of any action by the Holder to enforce the same, any waiver or consent with respect to any provision thereof, the recovery of any judgment against any person or any action to enforce the same, any failure or delay in the enforcement of any other obligation of the Borrower to the holder of record, or any setoff, counterclaim, recoupment, limitation or termination, or any breach or alleged breach by the Holder of any obligation to the Borrower, and irrespective of any other circumstance which might otherwise limit such obligation of the Borrower to the Holder in connection with such conversion. The Conversion Date specified in the Notice of Conversion shall be the Conversion Date so long as the Notice of Conversion is received by the Borrower before 5:00 p.m., New York, New York time, on such date.

(f) Delivery of Common Stock by Electronic Transfer. In lieu of delivering physical certificates representing the Common Stock issuable upon conversion, provided the Borrower is participating in the Depository Trust Company ("DTC") Fast Automated Securities Transfer ("FAST") program, upon request of the Holder and its compliance with the provisions contained in Sections 1.1 and 1.3 and in this Section 1.4, the Borrower shall use its commercially reasonable best efforts to cause its transfer agent to electronically transmit the Common Stock issuable upon conversion to the Holder by crediting the account of Holder's Prime Broker with DTC through its Deposit Withdrawal At Custodian ("DWAC") system.

(g) DTC Eligibility & Market Loss. If the Borrower fails to maintain its status as “DTC Eligible” for any reason, or, if the Conversion Price is less than \$0.01 at any time while this Note is outstanding, the principal amount of the Note shall increase by Fifteen Thousand and No/100 United States Dollars (\$15,000) (under Holder’s and Borrower’s expectation that any principal amount increase will tack back to the Issue Date). In addition, the Variable Conversion Price shall be redefined to mean forty percent (40%) multiplied by the Market Price, subject to adjustment as provided in this Note.

(h) Failure to Deliver Common Stock Prior to Deadline. Without in any way limiting the Holder’s right to pursue other remedies, including actual damages and/or equitable relief, the parties agree that if delivery of the Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note is not delivered by the Deadline, the Borrower shall pay to the Holder \$500 per day in cash, as liquidated damages, for each day beyond the Deadline that the Borrower fails to deliver such Common Stock. Such cash amount shall be paid to Holder by the fifth day of the month following the month in which it has accrued or, at the option of the Holder (by written notice to the Borrower by the first day of the month following the month in which it has accrued), shall be added to the principal amount of this Note, in which event interest shall accrue thereon in accordance with the terms of this Note and such additional principal amount shall be convertible into Common Stock in accordance with the terms of this Note. The Borrower agrees that the right to convert is a valuable right to the Holder. The damages resulting from a failure, attempt to frustrate, interference with such conversion right are difficult if not impossible to qualify. Accordingly the parties acknowledge that the liquidated damages provision contained in this Section 1.4(h) are justified.

Rescindment of a Notice of Conversion. If (i) the Borrower fails to respond to Holder within one (1) business day from the Conversion Date confirming the details of Notice of Conversion, (ii) the Borrower fails to provide any of the shares of the Borrower’s Common Stock requested in the Notice of Conversion within three (3) business days from the date of receipt of the Note of Conversion, (iii) the Holder is unable to procure a legal opinion required to have the shares of the Borrower’s Common Stock issued unrestricted and/or deposited to sell for any reason related to the Borrower’s standing, (iv) the Holder is unable to deposit the shares of the Borrower’s Common Stock requested in the Notice of Conversion for any reason related to the Borrower’s standing, (v) at any time after a missed Deadline, at the Holder’s sole discretion, or (vi) if OTC Markets changes the Borrower’s designation to ‘Limited Information’ (Yield), ‘No Information’ (Stop Sign), ‘Caveat Emptor’ (Skull & Crossbones), ‘OTC’, ‘Other OTC’ or ‘Grey Market’ (Exclamation Mark Sign) or other trading restriction on the day of or any day after the Conversion Date, the Holder maintains the option and sole discretion to rescind the Notice of Conversion (“Rescindment”) with a “Notice of Rescindment.”

1.5 Concerning the Shares. The shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note may not be sold or transferred unless (i) such shares are sold pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Act or (ii) the Borrower or its transfer agent shall have been furnished with an opinion of counsel (which opinion shall be in form, substance and scope customary for opinions of counsel in comparable transactions) to the effect that the shares to be sold or transferred may be sold or transferred pursuant to an exemption from such registration or (iii) such shares are sold or transferred pursuant to Rule 144 under the Act (or a successor rule) (“Rule 144”) or (iv) such shares are transferred to an “affiliate” (as defined in Rule 144) of the Borrower who agrees to sell or otherwise transfer the shares only in accordance with this Section 1.5 and who is an Accredited Investor. Except as otherwise provided in the Purchase Agreement (and subject to the removal provisions set forth below), until such time as the shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note have been registered under the Act or otherwise may be sold pursuant to Rule 144 without any restriction as to the number of securities as of a particular date that can then be immediately sold, each certificate for shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note that has not been so included in an effective registration statement or that has not been sold pursuant to an effective registration statement or an exemption that permits removal of the legend, shall bear a legend substantially in the following form, as appropriate:

**“NEITHER THE ISSUANCE AND SALE OF THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE NOR THE SECURITIES INTO WHICH THESE SECURITIES ARE CONVERTIBLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE SECURITIES MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED (I) IN THE ABSENCE OF (A) AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT FOR THE SECURITIES UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR (B) AN OPINION OF COUNSEL (WHICH COUNSEL SHALL BE COMPANY COUNSEL OR COUNSEL SELECTED BY THE HOLDER), IN A GENERALLY ACCEPTABLE FORM, THAT REGISTRATION IS NOT REQUIRED UNDER SAID ACT OR (II) UNLESS SOLD PURSUANT TO RULE 144 OR RULE 144A UNDER SAID ACT. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, THE SECURITIES MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN OR FINANCING ARRANGEMENT SECURED BY THE SECURITIES.”**

The legend set forth above shall be removed and the Borrower shall issue to the Holder a new certificate therefore free of any transfer legend if (i) the Borrower or its transfer agent shall have received an opinion of counsel, in form, substance and scope customary for opinions of counsel in comparable transactions, to the effect that a public sale or transfer of such Common Stock may be made without registration under the Act, which opinion shall be reasonably accepted by the Borrower so that the sale or transfer is effected or (ii) in the case of the Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note, such security is registered for sale by the Holder under an effective registration statement filed under the Act or otherwise may be sold pursuant to Rule 144 without any restriction as to the number of securities as of a particular date that can then be immediately sold. In the event that the Borrower does not accept the opinion of counsel provided by the Holder with respect to the transfer of Securities pursuant to an exemption from registration, such as Rule 144 or Regulation S, at the Deadline, it will be considered an Event of Default pursuant to Section 3.2 of the Note. The foregoing is subject to the requirements of Section 4(a)(1) of the Act and Rule 144.

1.6 Effect of Certain Events.

(a) Adjustment Due to Merger, Consolidation, Etc. If, at any time when this Note is issued and outstanding and prior to conversion of all of the Notes, there shall be any merger, consolidation, exchange of shares, recapitalization, reorganization, or other similar event, as a result of which shares of Common Stock of the Borrower shall be changed into the same or a different number of shares of another class or classes of stock or securities of the Borrower or another entity, or in case of any sale or conveyance of all or substantially all of the assets of the Borrower other than in connection with a plan of complete liquidation of the Borrower, then the Holder of this Note shall thereafter have the right to receive upon conversion of this Note, upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions specified herein and in lieu of the shares of Common Stock immediately theretofore issuable upon conversion, such stock, securities or assets which the Holder would have been entitled to receive in such transaction had this Note been converted in full immediately prior to such transaction (without regard to any limitations on conversion set forth herein), and in any such case appropriate provisions shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the Holder of this Note to the end that the provisions hereof (including, without limitation, provisions for adjustment of the Conversion Price and of the number of shares issuable upon conversion of the Note) shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly as may be practicable in relation to any securities or assets thereafter deliverable upon the conversion hereof. The Borrower shall not affect any transaction described in this Section 1.6(a) unless (a) it first gives, to the extent practicable, thirty (30) days prior written notice (but in any event at least fifteen (15) days prior written notice) of the record date of the special meeting of shareholders to approve, or if there is no such record date, the consummation of, such merger, consolidation, exchange of shares, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar event or sale of assets (during which time the Holder shall be entitled to convert this Note) and (b) the resulting successor or acquiring entity (if not the Borrower) assumes by written instrument the obligations of this Section 1.6(a). The above provisions shall similarly apply to successive consolidations, mergers, sales, transfers or share exchanges.

(b) Adjustment Due to Distribution. If the Borrower shall declare or make any distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of Common Stock as a dividend, stock repurchase, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including any dividend or distribution to the Borrower's shareholders in cash or shares (or rights to acquire shares) of capital stock of a subsidiary (i.e., a spin-off)) (a "Distribution"), then the Holder of this Note shall be entitled, upon any conversion of this Note after the date of record for determining shareholders entitled to such Distribution, to receive the amount of such assets which would have been payable to the Holder with respect to the shares of Common Stock issuable upon such conversion had such Holder been the holder of such shares of Common Stock on the record date for the determination of shareholders entitled to such Distribution.

(c) Purchase Rights. If, at any time when any Notes are issued and outstanding, the Borrower issues any convertible securities or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property (the "Purchase Rights") pro rata to the record holders of any class of Common Stock, then the Holder of this Note will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which such Holder could have acquired if such Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete conversion of this Note (without regard to any limitations on conversion contained herein) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights.

(d) Notice of Adjustments. Upon the occurrence of each adjustment or readjustment of the Conversion Price as a result of the events described in this Section 1.6, the Borrower, at its expense, shall promptly compute such adjustment or readjustment and prepare and furnish to the Holder a certificate setting forth such adjustment or readjustment and showing in detail the facts upon which such adjustment or readjustment is based. The Borrower shall, upon the written request at any time of the Holder, furnish to such Holder a like certificate setting forth (i) such adjustment or readjustment, (ii) the Conversion Price at the time in effect and (iii) the number of shares of Common Stock and the amount, if any, of other securities or property which at the time would be received upon conversion of the Note.

1.7 Status as Shareholder. Upon submission of a Notice of Conversion by a Holder, subject to Section 1.3, (i) the shares covered thereby (other than the shares, if any, which cannot be issued because their issuance would exceed such Holder's allocated portion of the Reserved Amount or Maximum Share Amount) shall be deemed converted into shares of Common Stock and (ii) the Holder's rights as a Holder of such converted portion of this Note shall cease and terminate, excepting only the right to receive certificates for such shares of Common Stock and to any remedies provided herein or otherwise available at law or in equity to such Holder because of a failure by the Borrower to comply with the terms of this Note. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a Holder has not received certificates for all shares of Common Stock prior to the tenth (10th) business day after the expiration of the Deadline with respect to a conversion of any portion of this Note for any reason, then (unless the Holder otherwise elects to retain its status as a holder of Common Stock by so notifying the Borrower) the Holder shall regain the rights of a Holder of this Note with respect to such unconverted portions of this Note and the Borrower shall, as soon as practicable, return such unconverted Note to the Holder or, if the Note has not been surrendered, adjust its records to reflect that such portion of this Note has not been converted. In all cases, the Holder shall retain all of its rights and remedies (including, without limitation, (i) the right to receive Conversion Default Payments pursuant to Section 1.3 to the extent required thereby for such Conversion Default and any subsequent Conversion Default and (ii) the right to have the Conversion Price with respect to subsequent conversions determined in accordance with Section 1.3) for the Borrower's failure to convert this Note.

1.8 Prepayment. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Note, the Borrower may prepay the amounts outstanding hereunder pursuant to the following terms and conditions:

(a) At any time during the period beginning on the Issue Date and ending on the date which is ninety (90) days following the Issue Date, the Borrower shall have the right, exercisable on not less than three (3) Trading Days prior written notice to the Holder of the Note to prepay the outstanding Note (principal and accrued interest), in full by making a payment to the Holder of an amount in cash equal to 125%, multiplied by the sum of: (w) the then outstanding principal amount of this Note plus (x) accrued and unpaid interest on the unpaid principal amount of this Note plus (y) Default Interest, if any.

(b) At any time during the period beginning the day which is ninety one (91) days following the Issue Date and ending on the date which is one hundred eighty (180) days following the Issue Date, the Borrower shall have the right, exercisable on not less than three (3) Trading Days prior written notice to the Holder of the Note to prepay the outstanding Note (principal and accrued interest), in full by making a payment to the Holder of an amount in cash equal to 135%, multiplied by the sum of: (w) the then outstanding principal amount of this Note plus (x) accrued and unpaid interest on the unpaid principal amount of this Note plus (y) Default Interest, if any.

(c) After the expiration of one hundred eighty (180) days following the date of the Note, the Borrower shall have no right of prepayment.

1.9 Any notice of prepayment hereunder (an "Optional Prepayment Notice") shall be delivered to the Holder of the Note at its registered addresses and shall state: (1) that the Borrower is exercising its right to prepay the Note, and (2) the date of prepayment which shall be not more than three (3) Trading Days from the date of the Optional Prepayment Notice. On the date fixed for prepayment (the "Optional Prepayment Date"), the Borrower shall make payment of the applicable prepayment amount to or upon the order of the Holder as specified by the Holder in writing to the Borrower at least one (1) business day prior to the Optional Prepayment Date. If the Borrower delivers an Optional Prepayment Notice and fails to pay the applicable prepayment amount due to the Holder of the Note within two (2) business days following the Optional Prepayment Date, the Borrower shall forever forfeit its right to prepay the Note pursuant to this Section 1.9.

## ARTICLE II. CERTAIN COVENANTS

2.1 Distributions on Capital Stock. So long as the Borrower shall have any obligation under this Note, the Borrower shall not without the Holder's written consent (a) pay, declare or set apart for such payment, any dividend or other distribution (whether in cash, property or other securities) on shares of capital stock other than dividends on shares of Common Stock solely in the form of additional shares of Common Stock or (b) directly or indirectly or through any subsidiary make any other payment or distribution in respect of its capital stock except for distributions pursuant to any shareholders' rights plan which is approved by a majority of the Borrower's disinterested directors.

2.2 Restriction on Stock Repurchases. So long as the Borrower shall have any obligation under this Note, the Borrower shall not without the Holder's written consent redeem, repurchase or otherwise acquire (whether for cash or in exchange for property or other securities or otherwise) in any one transaction or series of related transactions any shares of capital stock of the Borrower or, other than in exchange for securities of the Borrower, any warrants, rights or options to purchase or acquire any such shares.

### ARTICLE III. EVENTS OF DEFAULT

If any of the following events of default (each, an “Event of Default”) shall occur:

3.1 Failure to Pay Principal or Interest. The Borrower fails to pay the principal hereof or interest thereon when due on this Note, whether at maturity, upon acceleration or otherwise, and such breach continues for a period of five (5) days.

3.2 Conversion and the Shares. The Borrower (i) fails to issue shares of Common Stock to the Holder (or announces or threatens in writing that it will not honor its obligation to do so) upon exercise by the Holder of the conversion rights of the Holder in accordance with the terms of this Note, (ii) fails to transfer or cause its transfer agent to transfer (issue) (electronically or in certificated form) any certificate for shares of Common Stock issued to the Holder upon conversion of or otherwise pursuant to this Note as and when required by this Note, (iii) directs its transfer agent not to transfer or delays, impairs, and/or hinders its transfer agent in transferring (or issuing) (electronically or in certificated form) any certificate for shares of Common Stock to be issued to the Holder upon conversion of or otherwise pursuant to this Note as and when required by this Note, (iv) fails to remove (or directs its transfer agent not to remove or impairs, delays, and/or hinders its transfer agent from removing) any restrictive legend (or to withdraw any stop transfer instructions in respect thereof) on any certificate for any shares of Common Stock issued to the Holder upon conversion of or otherwise pursuant to this Note as and when required by this Note (or makes any written announcement, statement or threat that it does not intend to honor the obligations described in this paragraph) and any such failure shall continue uncured (or any written announcement, statement or threat not to honor its obligations shall not be rescinded in writing) for three (3) business days after the Holder shall have delivered a Notice of Conversion, (v) fails to remain current in its obligations to its transfer agent, (vi) causes a conversion of this Note is delayed, hindered or frustrated due to a balance owed by the Borrower to its transfer agent, (vii) fails to repay Holder, within forty eight (48) hours of a demand from the Holder, any amount of funds advanced by Holder to Borrower’s transfer agent in order to process a conversion, and/or (viii) fails to maintain the Reserved Amount.

3.3 Breach of Covenants. The Borrower breaches any material covenant or other material term or condition contained in this Note and any collateral documents (including but not limited to the Purchase Agreement) and such breach continues for a period of ten (10) days after written notice thereof to the Borrower from the Holder.

3.4 Breach of Representations and Warranties. Any representation or warranty of the Borrower made herein or in any agreement, statement or certificate given in writing pursuant hereto or in connection herewith (including without limitation the Purchase Agreement), shall be false or misleading in any material respect when made and the breach of which has (or with the passage of time will have) a material adverse effect on the rights of the Holder with respect to this Note or the Purchase Agreement.

3.5 [Intentionally Omitted].

3.6 [Intentionally Omitted].

3.7 Bankruptcy. Bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or liquidation proceedings or other proceedings, voluntary or involuntary, for relief under any bankruptcy law or any law for the relief of debtors shall be instituted by or against the Borrower or any subsidiary of the Borrower.



3.8 Delisting of Common Stock. The Borrower shall fail to maintain the listing or quotation of the Common Stock on the OTCQB or an equivalent replacement exchange, the Nasdaq Global Market, the Nasdaq Capital Market, the New York Stock Exchange, or the NYSE MKT.

3.9 Failure to Comply with the Exchange Act. The Borrower shall fail to comply with the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act (including but not limited to becoming delinquent in its filings), and/or the Borrower shall cease to be subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act.

3.10 Liquidation. Any dissolution, liquidation, or winding up of Borrower or any substantial portion of its business.

3.11 Cessation of Operations; Maintenance of Assets. Any cessation of operations by Borrower, or disposition or conveyance of any material asset of the Borrower if such disposition or conveyance would cause the Borrower to become a “shell” company.

3.12 [Intentionally Omitted].

3.13 Replacement of Transfer Agent. In the event that the Borrower replaces its transfer agent, and the Borrower fails to provide prior to the effective date of such replacement, a fully executed Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions (including but not limited to the provision to irrevocably reserve shares of Common Stock in the Reserved Amount) signed by the successor transfer agent to Borrower and the Borrower.

3.14 Cessation of Trading. Any cessation of trading of the Common Stock on at least one of the OTC Pink, OTCQB, Nasdaq National Market, Nasdaq Small Cap Market, New York Stock Exchange, NYSE MKT, or an equivalent replacement exchange, and such cessation of trading shall continue for a period of five consecutive (5) Trading Days.3.20 OTC Markets Designation. OTC Markets changes the Borrower’s designation to ‘No Information’ (Stop Sign), ‘Caveat Emptor’ (Skull and Crossbones), or ‘OTC’, ‘Other OTC’ or ‘Grey Market’ (Exclamation Mark Sign).

3.15 Inside Information. Any attempt by the Borrower or its officers, directors, and/or affiliates to transmit, convey, disclose, or any actual transmittal, conveyance, or disclosure by the Borrower or its officers, directors, and/or affiliates of, material non-public information concerning the Borrower, to the Holder or its successors and assigns, which is not immediately cured by Borrower’s filing of a Form 8-K pursuant to Regulation FD on that same date.

3.16 Unavailability of Rule 144. If, at any time on or after the date which is six (6) months after the Issue Date, the Holder is unable to (i) obtain a standard “144 legal opinion letter” from an attorney reasonably acceptable to the Holder, the Holder’s brokerage firm (and respective clearing firm), and the Borrower’s transfer agent in order to facilitate the Holder’s conversion of any portion of the Note into free trading shares of the Borrower’s Common Stock pursuant to Rule 144, and (ii) thereupon deposit such shares into the Holder’s brokerage account.

Upon the occurrence of any Event of Default specified in Sections 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 3.10, 3.11, 3.13, 3.14, 3.15, and/or 3.16 exercisable through the delivery of written notice to the Borrower by the Holder (the "Default Notice"), the Note shall become immediately due and payable and the Borrower shall pay to the Holder, in full satisfaction of its obligations hereunder, an amount equal to 135% multiplied by the then outstanding entire balance of the Note (including principal and accrued and unpaid interest) plus Default Interest, if any, plus any amounts owed to the Holder pursuant to Sections 1.4(g) hereof (collectively, in the aggregate of all of the above, the "Default Sum"), and all other amounts payable hereunder shall immediately become due and payable, all without demand, presentment or notice, all of which hereby are expressly waived, together with all costs, including, without limitation, legal fees and expenses, of collection, and the Holder shall be entitled to exercise all other rights and remedies available at law or in equity.

The Holder shall have the right at any time to require the Borrower to issue the number of shares of Common Stock of the Borrower equal to the Default Sum divided by the Conversion Price then in effect, subject to issuance in tranches due to the beneficial ownership limitations contained in this Note.

#### ARTICLE IV. MISCELLANEOUS

4.1 Failure or Indulgence Not Waiver. No failure or delay on the part of the Holder in the exercise of any power, right or privilege hereunder shall operate as a waiver thereof, nor shall any single or partial exercise of any such power, right or privilege preclude other or further exercise thereof or of any other right, power or privileges. All rights and remedies existing hereunder are cumulative to, and not exclusive of, any rights or remedies otherwise available.

4.2 Notices. All notices, demands, requests, consents, approvals, and other communications required or permitted hereunder shall be in writing and, unless otherwise specified herein, shall be (i) personally served, (ii) deposited in the mail, registered or certified, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, (iii) delivered by reputable air courier service with charges prepaid, or (iv) transmitted by hand delivery, facsimile, or electronic mail addressed as set forth below or to such other address as such party shall have specified most recently by written notice. Any notice or other communication required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be deemed effective (a) upon hand delivery, upon electronic mail delivery, or delivery by facsimile, with accurate confirmation generated by the transmitting facsimile machine, at the address or number designated below (if delivered on a business day during normal business hours where such notice is to be received), or the first business day following such delivery (if delivered other than on a business day during normal business hours where such notice is to be received) or (b) on the second business day following the date of mailing by express courier service, fully prepaid, addressed to such address, or upon actual receipt of such mailing, whichever shall first occur. The addresses for such communications shall be:

If to the Borrower, to:

BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.  
40 Marcus Drive  
Melville, NY 11747  
Attn: Mark Weinreb  
Facsimile: (631) 760-8414  
E-mail: [info@biorestorative.com](mailto:info@biorestorative.com)

With a copy to (which copy shall not constitute notice):

Certilman Balin Adler & Hyman, LLP  
90 Merrick Avenue  
East Meadow, NY 11554  
Attn: Fred Skolnik, Esq.  
Facsimile: (516) 296-7111  
Email: [fskolnik@certilmanbalin.com](mailto:fskolnik@certilmanbalin.com)

If to the Holder:

Auctus Fund, LLC  
177 Huntington Avenue, 17th Floor  
Boston, MA 02115  
Attn: Lou Posner  
Facsimile: (617) 532-6420

With a copy to (which copy shall not constitute notice):

Chad Friend, Esq., LL.M.  
Legal & Compliance, LLC  
330 Clematis Street, Suite 217  
West Palm Beach, FL 33401  
E-mail: [CFriend@LegalandCompliance.com](mailto:CFriend@LegalandCompliance.com)

4.3 Amendments. This Note and any provision hereof may only be amended by an instrument in writing signed by the Borrower and the Holder. The term "Note" and all reference thereto, as used throughout this instrument, shall mean this instrument as originally executed, or if later amended or supplemented, then as so amended or supplemented.

4.4 Assignability. This Note shall be binding upon the Borrower and its successors and assigns, and shall inure to be the benefit of the Holder and its successors and assigns. Neither the Borrower nor the Holder shall assign this Note or any rights or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of the other. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Holder may assign its rights hereunder to any "accredited investor" (as defined in Rule 501(a) of the 1933 Act) in a private transaction from the Holder or to any of its "affiliates", as that term is defined under the 1934 Act, without the consent of the Borrower. Notwithstanding anything in this Note to the contrary, this Note may be pledged as collateral in connection with a bona fide margin account or other lending arrangement. The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Note, acknowledge and agree that following conversion of a portion of this Note, the unpaid and unconverted principal amount of this Note represented by this Note may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.

4.5 Cost of Collection. If default is made in the payment of this Note, the Borrower shall pay the Holder hereof reasonable costs of collection, including reasonable attorneys' fees.

4.6 Governing Law. This Note shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Nevada without regard to principles of conflicts of laws. Any action brought by either party against the other concerning the transactions contemplated by this Note shall be brought only in the state courts of Massachusetts or in the federal courts located in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts. The parties to this Note hereby irrevocably waive any objection to jurisdiction and venue of any action instituted hereunder and shall not assert any defense based on lack of jurisdiction or venue or based upon *forum non conveniens*. **EACH OF THE BORROWER AND THE HOLDER HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO, AND AGREES NOT TO REQUEST, A JURY TRIAL FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THIS NOTE OR ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.** The prevailing party shall be entitled to recover from the other party its reasonable attorney's fees and costs. In the event that any provision of this Note or any other agreement delivered in connection herewith is invalid or unenforceable under any applicable statute or rule of law, then such provision shall be deemed inoperative to the extent that it may conflict therewith and shall be deemed modified to conform with such statute or rule of law. Any such provision which may prove invalid or unenforceable under any law shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision of any agreement. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any suit, action or proceeding in connection with this Agreement or any other Transaction Document by mailing a copy thereof via registered or certified mail or overnight delivery (with evidence of delivery) to such party at the address in effect for notices to it under this Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any other manner permitted by law.

4.7 Certain Amounts. Whenever pursuant to this Note the Borrower is required to pay an amount in excess of the outstanding principal amount (or the portion thereof required to be paid at that time) plus accrued and unpaid interest plus Default Interest on such interest, the Borrower and the Holder agree that the actual damages to the Holder from the receipt of cash payment on this Note may be difficult to determine and the amount to be so paid by the Borrower represents stipulated damages and not a penalty and is intended to compensate the Holder in part for loss of the opportunity to convert this Note and to earn a return from the sale of shares of Common Stock acquired upon conversion of this Note at a price in excess of the price paid for such shares pursuant to this Note. The Borrower and the Holder hereby agree that such amount of stipulated damages is not plainly disproportionate to the possible loss to the Holder from the receipt of a cash payment without the opportunity to convert this Note into shares of Common Stock.

4.8 Purchase Agreement. By its acceptance of this Note, each party agrees to be bound by the applicable terms of the Purchase Agreement.

4.9 Usury. If it shall be found that any interest or other amount deemed interest due hereunder violates the applicable law governing usury, the applicable provision shall automatically be revised to equal the maximum rate of interest or other amount deemed interest permitted under applicable law. The Borrower covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not seek to claim or take advantage of any law that would prohibit or forgive the Borrower from paying all or a portion of the principal or interest on this Note.

4.10 Remedies. The Borrower acknowledges that a breach by it of its obligations hereunder will cause irreparable harm to the Holder, by vitiating the intent and purpose of the transaction contemplated hereby. Accordingly, the Borrower acknowledges that the remedy at law for a breach of its obligations under this Note will be inadequate and agrees, in the event of a breach or threatened breach by the Borrower of the provisions of this Note, that the Holder shall be entitled, in addition to all other available remedies at law or in equity, and in addition to the penalties assessable herein, to an injunction or injunctions restraining, preventing or curing any breach of this Note and to enforce specifically the terms and provisions thereof, without the necessity of showing economic loss and without any bond or other security being required. No provision of this Note shall alter or impair the obligation of the Borrower, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of, and interest on, this Note at the time, place, and rate, and in the form, herein prescribed.

4.11 Severability. In the event that any provision of this Note is invalid or unenforceable under any applicable statute or rule of law, then such provision shall be deemed inoperative to the extent that it may conflict therewith and shall be deemed modified to conform with such statute or rule of law. Any provision hereof which may prove invalid or unenforceable under any law shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision hereof.

4.12 Dispute Resolution. In the case of a dispute as to the determination of the Conversion Price, Conversion Amount, any prepayment amount or Default Amount, Default Sum, Closing or Maturity Date, the closing bid price, or fair market value (as the case may be) or the arithmetic calculation of the Conversion Price or the applicable prepayment amount(s) (as the case may be), the Borrower or the Holder shall submit the disputed determinations or arithmetic calculations via facsimile (i) within two (2) Business Days after receipt of the applicable notice giving rise to such dispute to the Borrower or the Holder or (ii) if no notice gave rise to such dispute, at any time after the Holder learned of the circumstances giving rise to such dispute. If the Holder and the Borrower are unable to agree upon such determination or calculation within two (2) Business Days of such disputed determination or arithmetic calculation (as the case may be) being submitted to the Borrower or the Holder, then the Borrower shall, within two (2) Business Days, submit via facsimile (a) the disputed determination of the Conversion Price, the closing bid price, the or fair market value (as the case may be) to an independent, reputable investment bank selected by the Borrower and approved by the Holder or (b) the disputed arithmetic calculation of the Conversion Price, Conversion Amount, any prepayment amount or Default Amount, Default Sum to an independent, outside accountant selected by the Holder that is reasonably acceptable to the Borrower. The Borrower shall cause at its expense the investment bank or the accountant to perform the determinations or calculations and notify the Borrower and the Holder of the results no later than ten (10) Business Days from the time it receives such disputed determinations or calculations. Such investment bank's or accountant's determination or calculation shall be binding upon all parties absent demonstrable error.

4.13 Terms of Future Financings. So long as this Note is outstanding, upon any issuance by the Borrower or any of its subsidiaries of any security with conversion discounts and/or prepayment premiums more favorable to the holder of such security, then the Borrower shall notify the Holder of such additional or more favorable term and such term, at Holder's option, shall become a part of the transaction documents with the Holder.

4.14 Piggyback Registration Rights.

(a) In the event the Borrower shall determine to file a Registration Statement under the Act (other than on Form S-4 or Form S-8 or another form not available for registering the Borrower's Common Stock for sale to the public) in connection with the proposed offer and sale of any of its securities, the Borrower shall give written notice of its determination to the Holder (a "Piggyback Notice"). In the event the Holder, within twenty (20) days after the receipt of the Piggyback Notice, shall notify the Borrower of its desire that the shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note (the "Conversion Shares") be included in the Registration Statement, the Borrower shall include such Conversion Shares in the Registration Statement, all to the extent requisite to permit the sale or other disposition by the Holder of the Conversion Shares to be so registered; provided, however, that the Borrower may at any time, in its sole discretion, withdraw or cease proceeding with any such registration.

(b) If the registration with respect to which the Borrower gives the Piggyback Notice is for a public offering involving an underwriting, the Borrower agrees to so advise the Holder as a part of its written notice. In such event, the right of the Holder to registration pursuant to this Section 4.14 shall be conditioned upon the Holder's participation in such underwriting and the inclusion of the Holder's Conversion Shares in the underwriting to the extent required by the managing underwriter. In such event, the Holder shall enter into an underwriting agreement with the underwriter or underwriters selected for such underwriting by the Borrower on terms that are acceptable to the Borrower.

(c) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 4.14, if the managing underwriter of an underwritten distribution or placement agent of a best efforts offering advises the Borrower and the Holder in writing that in its good faith judgment the number of Conversion Shares requested to be registered under this Section 4.14 and other securities requested to be registered exceeds the number of shares of Common Stock and other securities which can be sold in such offering without adversely affecting the success of such offering or the price at which such securities are offered, then (i) the number of Conversion Shares and other securities (except for shares to be issued by the Borrower for its own account) so requested to be included in the offering shall be reduced to that number of shares which in the good faith judgment of the managing underwriter or placement agent can be sold in such offering, and (ii) such reduced number of shares, if any, shall be allocated among the Holder and holders of other securities in proportion, as nearly as practicable, to the respective number of Conversion Shares and other securities requested by the Holder and other holders to be included in the Registration Statement.

(d) Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Borrower need not send a Piggyback Notice if the Conversion Shares are then saleable pursuant to Rule 144.

[signature page to follow]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Borrower has caused this Note to be signed in its name by its duly authorized officer this March 27, 2018.

**BIORESTORATIVE THERAPIES, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Mark Weinreb  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

---

EXHIBIT A  
NOTICE OF CONVERSION

The undersigned hereby elects to convert \$ \_\_\_\_\_ principal amount of the Note (defined below) together with \$ \_\_\_\_\_ of accrued and unpaid interest thereto, totaling \$ \_\_\_\_\_ into that number of shares of Common Stock to be issued pursuant to the conversion of the Note ("Common Stock") as set forth below, of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Borrower"), according to the conditions of the convertible note of the Borrower dated as of March 27, 2018 (the "Note"), as of the date written below. No fee will be charged to the Holder for any conversion, except for transfer taxes, if any.

Box Checked as to applicable instructions:

The Borrower shall electronically transmit the Common Stock issuable pursuant to this Notice of Conversion to the account of the undersigned or its nominee with DTC through its Deposit Withdrawal At Custodian system ("DWAC Transfer").

Name of DTC Prime Broker:  
Account Number:

The undersigned hereby requests that the Borrower issue a certificate or certificates for the number of shares of Common Stock set forth below (which numbers are based on the Holder's calculation attached hereto) in the name(s) specified immediately below or, if additional space is necessary, on an attachment hereto:

Name: [NAME]  
Address: [ADDRESS]

Date of Conversion: \_\_\_\_\_  
Applicable Conversion Price: \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
Number of Shares of Common Stock to be Issued \_\_\_\_\_  
Pursuant to Conversion of the Notes: \_\_\_\_\_  
Amount of Principal Balance Due remaining \_\_\_\_\_  
Under the Note after this conversion: \_\_\_\_\_  
Accrued and unpaid interest remaining: \_\_\_\_\_

[HOLDER]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_

---





LIST OF SUBSIDIARIES

<u>Name of Subsidiary</u>	<u>Jurisdiction of Incorporation/Organization</u>
Stem Pearls, LLC	New York

---



**INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM'S CONSENT**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statements of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the "Company") on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-196299, 333-203310, 333-210555 and 333-214621) of our report dated April 2, 2018, which includes an explanatory paragraph as to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern, with respect to our audits of the consolidated financial statements of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. and Subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years then ended, which report is included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2017.

/s/ Marcum LLP

Marcum LLP  
New York, NY  
April 2, 2018

---



## SECTION 302 CERTIFICATION OF PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICER

I, Mark Weinreb, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report.
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report.
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 2, 2018

*/s/ Mark Weinreb*

---

Mark Weinreb  
Principal Executive Officer

---



## SECTION 302 CERTIFICATION OF PRINCIPAL FINANCIAL OFFICER

## I, Mark Weinreb, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc.
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report.
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report.
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 2, 2018

*/s/ Mark Weinreb*

---

Mark Weinreb  
Principal Financial Officer





**CERTIFICATION OF PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICER  
AND PRINCIPAL FINANCIAL OFFICER  
PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. § 1350, the undersigned officer of BioRestorative Therapies, Inc. (the “Company”) hereby certifies that the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 (the “Report”) fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d), as applicable, of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and that the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: April 2, 2018

*/s/ Mark Weinreb*

---

Mark Weinreb  
Principal Executive Officer and  
Principal Financial Officer

The foregoing certification is being furnished solely pursuant to 18 U.S.C. § 1350 and is not being filed as part of the Report or as a separate disclosure document.

---

